IELTS Course

初级下

雅思标准教程

主编 刘薇

结合评分标准，全面培养核心语言能力

解读常考主题，剖析各大题型命题特点

练习契合考点，强化雅思四科解题技能

Listening Reading Writing Speaking

外语教学与研究出版社
FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS

扫码获取配套音频
下载方式见封底

IELTS Course

初级下

雅思标准教程

主编 刘薇

外语教学与研究出版社
FOREIGN LANGUAGE TEACHING AND RESEARCH PRESS
北京 BEIJING

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

雅思标准教程：初级．下／刘薇主编．-- 北京：外语教学与研究出版社，2022.12（2023.5 重印）
ISBN 978-7-5213-4135-5

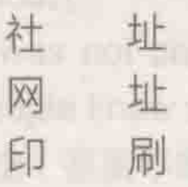
Ⅰ．①雅… Ⅱ．①刘… Ⅲ．①IELTS－自学参考资料 Ⅳ．①H310.41

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2022）第 232897 号

出 版 人　王　芳
项目策划　刘　旭
责任编辑　许圆圆
责任校对　王　晶
封面设计　李　高
出版发行　外语教学与研究出版社
社　　址　北京市西三环北路 19 号（100089）
网　　址　https://www.fltrp.com
印　　刷　三河市北燕印装有限公司
开　　本　889×1194　1/16
印　　张　14
版　　次　2023 年 1 月第 1 版　2023 年 5 月第 3 次印刷
书　　号　ISBN 978-7-5213-4135-5
定　　价　56.00 元

如有图书采购需求，图书内容或印刷装订等问题，侵权、盗版书籍等线索，请拨打以下电话或关注官方服务号：
客服电话：400 898 7008
官方服务号：微信搜索并关注公众号“外研社官方服务号”
外研社购书网址：https://fltrp.tmall.com

物料号：341350001



记载人类文明
沟通世界文化
www.fltrp.com

编委会

总 策 划 刘 薇

项目策划 赵 健 杨崇圣 刘炜丽 楚梁梁

委　　员 刘丹妮 李 超 王 铎 张罗曼
尹星钰 王 娟 赵紫燕 罗 晖
韦蕴珂 Tim Williams

编写说明

教程总体介绍

“雅思标准教程”依据广大雅思考生备考雅思的实际需求而编写。本教程充分研究雅思考试所需的底层能力，从听、说、读、写四个方面，全面培养考生对英语的掌握和运用能力，力图以科学的教学理念和学习方法为备考雅思提供指导。

本教程共分为四个级别，每个级别包括上下两册，每册含 5 个学习单元。本教程既可用于自学备考，也适合在针对雅思考试的辅导课堂上使用。

教程主要特点

1. 设计思路注重英语能力培养

雅思考试重在考查考生的英语运用能力，注重语言能力和在语境中的应用。因此，本教程全面覆盖英语学习中的各项技能，每个单元均设置听、读、说、写四个板块，全面提升考生的语言技能。为使考生进一步掌握并检测所学技能，每个单元都配有与雅思考试题型直接相关的练习。各单元的听力原文和阅读篇章均选自英文原版材料，语言准确地道。

2. 内容编排采用讲练结合的形式

只有讲解的雅思备考无法帮助考生有效掌握知识点，而一味地练习则缺乏系统性且枯燥乏味。因此，本教程将知识点讲解与题目练习相结合，一方面有针对性地讲解雅思听、读、说、写四个科目必备的知识点和雅思各个题型的解题技巧，另一方面使用雅思考试中用得到的语料和题型进行巩固强化，让考生充分吸收所学内容。

3. 教程内容紧密结合雅思考试

本教程结合雅思听、说、读、写各科目的评分标准，有针对性地培养考试相关的语言能力。在口语和写作板块，将评分标准中抽象的要点具体化，突出强调考官在评分时希望听到或看到的要点，指导考生避开陷阱和误区。听力、阅读的输入与口语、写作的输出同步并进，逐步提升考生在英语语言运用方面的薄弱项，使考生在备考阶段不盲目，有的放矢，从而高效备考。

4. 阶段性复习巩固强化知识点

本教程在能力培养和题型讲解部分循序渐进，在一系列知识点讲解后进行阶段性回顾总结，巩固强化所学知识点。这样既能给尚未完全掌握的考生提供消化的时间，也能帮助已经掌握知识点的考生加强记忆、促进提升，起到承前启后的作用。

5. 难度设计合理

本教程在难度设计上充分考虑到目标对象的接受能力，各个单元的难度由基础到强化逐步提升，使考生逐渐适应雅思考试的难度要求，同时又不给学习过程增加太大压力。词汇基础部分以简单的练习引出与单元话题有关的基础词汇，课后练习中则补充难度稍高的练习，以满足不同考生的难度需求，并为进一步巩固提升做准备。听、读、说、写四个科目内容在难度上基本保持一致，但由于雅思考试本身对于这四项能力的要求有所不同，比如：阅读对词汇量的要求较高，而口语则相对较低。因此，四科之间在词汇和语法的难度上存在差异。

单元结构

Listening

词汇基础

该部分包含 3~4 个词汇练习，题型多样，并具备一定的趣味性，可以激发考生的学习兴趣，帮助考生熟悉场景词汇及单元主题相关词汇。“场景词汇”部分罗列了与主题相关的词汇，以及本单元所讲场景中常见的听力词汇，帮助考生在熟悉场景词汇的基础上提高听力的反应能力。

能力培养

预备级着重培养考生对于听力基础技能的熟悉和掌握，如基础信息的抓取、点听、影子跟读、速记等。初级强调考生能够将预备级中学到的听力基础技能和练习方法运用到较难的题型中，同时掌握较难题型（包括中等难度的表格题、选择题和更高难度的多选题、匹配题、地图题以及流程图题等）的解题方法。因此，在初级中，听力基础技能和较难题型讲解会穿插出现，这种编排既能帮助考生有效复习之前所学的知识点，又使他们有余力吸收新的知识点。此外，本部分还包含 3~4 个相关练习，题目融合了之前所学的知识点，检测考生是否掌握了相应的能力。预备级和初级覆盖了所有需要培养的听力基础能力和雅思听力各种题型的讲解，在难度上逐步进阶。

题型讲解

预备级主要讲解个人信息填空题，着重考查基础信息内容，包括数字、人名、国家、地点等常见的基础信息。Unit 1 重点讲解该题型，其余单元结合主题讲解雅思听力考试的高频生活场景。讲解之后设置 2 个练习，与雅思听力 Part 1 的考查范围相似，难度较低，帮助学生奠定听力学习的基础。初级涉及其他听力题型，讲解更难的雅思听力考试学科场景，必要时添加关于解题细节的 Tips。讲解之后设置 2 个练习，结合高频场景和能力培养中的技能进行综合考查，难度更加接近雅思真题，属于雅思听力 Part 2 和 Part 3 的考查范围。

课后练习

该部分包含 3~5 个练习，分别对本单元听力部分所学的词汇、能力和题型进行巩固强化，难度递增。预备级中包含至少 1 个雅思听力题型和场景练习，通常为 5 空的填空题，此外还设有趣味性题目，以激发考生的英语学习兴趣。初级包含 1~2 个 10 题以内的雅思听力题型和场景练习，主要检测考生对听力技能和较难题型的综合掌握，此外还设有开放性题目，帮助考生理解不同题型的做题方法。

Reading

词汇基础

该部分包含 4 个练习，可分为两部分，前半部分侧重生词辨析、分类与搭配，后半部分侧重考查单词在文章中的具体运用。题目设置由易到难，从单词到句子、篇章，从三个不同维度，多方位地帮助考生熟悉和积累每个单元的主题相关词汇。“主题词汇”中为考生罗列出常用的单词和短语，尽可能拓展考生对于相关主题的认知词汇量。

能力培养

该部分讲解 1~3 个阅读技能，并通过阅读任务使考生深刻理解所学技能。与雅思阅读文章相比，该部分文章长度稍短，难度与雅思 A 类文章接近。从预备级到初级，文章的长度和难度会相应递增，帮助考生适应考试难度。预备级从文章的基本特征、阅读方法、速读技巧、概括能力等方面切入，逐步培养考生英语阅读的基本能力。初级则强调英语阅读进阶能力的掌握，从文章体裁特征、信息抓取能力、生词应对方法以及文章逻辑结构等方面提高阅读的实战技巧。每 4 个单元后设有 1 个总结单元，对此前学习的技能进行复习与巩固。

题型讲解

该部分着重讲解雅思阅读考试中的题型，通过不同的阅读任务帮助考生逐步掌握解答该题型所需的各项能力。最后 1 个任务的题目要求与雅思阅读考试中该题型的要求保持一致。本部分文章长度比雅思 A 类文章稍短，文章难度相当。预备级包括简答题、完成句子题、摘要题、笔记题、填图题、表格题和流程图题七大类。初级包括匹配题、判断题、选择题和小标题匹配题四大类。各类题型的难度从预备级到初级逐步增加，每个级别的最后 1 个单元对前 9 个单元进行总结复习。

课后练习

该部分包含 1 篇阅读文章，针对各单元的“题型讲解”部分设置相对应的题型，帮助考生对本单元所学内容进行巩固强化。文章难度与雅思 A 类阅读文章相当，长度稍短。每个级别的最后 1 个单元设置 1 组雅思阅读的标准题型，即 1 篇文章设置 2~3 个题型，总共 13 题，使考生能够完整体验雅思阅读考试的解题过程。

Speaking

词汇基础

该部分针对雅思口语评分标准中的“词汇多样性”一项进行设计，包含 2 个词汇练习。练习

形式丰富，包括匹配题、填空题、分类题、描述题等，帮助考生熟悉贴近单元主题的雅思口语常用词汇及日常口语必备词汇，提高考生对话题词汇的认知与分辨能力，增强记忆效果。在词汇难度上，初级较预备级有所上升，以期满足不同能力阶段考生的实际需求。

能力培养

该部分针对雅思口语评分标准中的“语法多样性及准确性”和“发音”两项进行设计，包含对语法和发音两方面能力的培养。语法方面，选取口语中使用频率较高的语法类型，从预备级到初级难度逐渐上升，从对词性、时态及相关用法的讲解过渡到语态、句型和从句讲解，例句及练习大多为与单元话题相关的口语语料，帮助考生在理解和掌握口语重点语法的基础上，积累更多话题表达。语法讲解后设有练习，训练考生遣词造句的基本能力。初级的练习部分加入图片描述题，要求考生运用积累的词汇和语法描述图片，鼓励考生化被动吸收知识为主动开口表达。在发音方面，预备级由字母 A 到 Z 串讲字母及字母组合的发音示范，尽量避开复杂的国际音标体系的学习，从实用角度跟读模仿标准英式英语发音。初级着重讲解语音现象，通过对连读、弱读、不完全爆破、语调等的讲解，实现考生在语音方面的精进。预备级和初级发音部分的例句均为本单元话题的相关语料，为考生的话题描述拓展素材。

话题讲解

该部分针对雅思口语评分标准中的“流利度与连贯性”和“词汇多样性”两项进行设计，通过对精选的雅思口语高频真题进行集中分析与讲解，帮助考生学会审题、拓展思路，在积累相关词汇句型和优质语料的基础上主动描述话题。“考题重现”部分罗列了单元话题下的雅思口语高频真题，为考生展示问题的形式和考查方向。“高分语料”部分给出与话题相关的答题角度，旨在帮助考生积累丰富的素材和句式，拓展答题的思路。预备级每单元讲解 2 个雅思口语 Part 1 精选话题，初级每单元讲解 1 个 Part 1 精选话题和 1 个 Part 2 精选话题。

课后练习

该部分针对雅思口语评分标准中的“流利性与连贯性”和“词汇多样性”两项进行设计，包含 2 个练习，对本单元重点培养的能力和话题描述进行巩固强化，以期满足考生的进阶需求。练习 1 的题型包括填空题、选择题、匹配题、句子改写题和描述题等，初级较预备级在难度上有所提升，描述题比例增加；练习 2 为开放性描述题，选取难度较高的雅思口语 Part 1 和 Part 2 真题，鼓励考生灵活运用本单元所学内容，进行口语考试的模拟练习。

Writing

词汇基础

预备级包含 3 个词汇练习；初级包含 2 个词汇练习。预备级的题型多样，包括选择题、填空题、匹配题等；初级的题型则多为拼写题和填空题，更加侧重文章结构布局讲解。本部分的词汇练习以基础词汇、单元主题相关词汇为重点，帮助考生快速了解话题。

能力培养

该部分针对雅思写作中的“语法多样性及准确性”“词汇多样性”“连贯与衔接”三项进行设计。预备级包含 4 个维度的能力培养，即书写规范、词汇表达、语法重点和衔接方式；初级包含 3 个维度的能力培养，即词汇表达、语法重点和衔接方式。讲解之后设置练习，用于检测学习成果。本部分使用的例句大多为与单元话题相关的写作语料。

书写规范部分列出了考生易犯的书写错误，涉及写作风格、语域、标点等。

词汇表达部分列出主题相关词汇，难度逐步进阶，预备级的前 5 个单元以主题单词为主，后 5 个单元以与主题相关的写作考点短语为主；初级则以与主题相关的核心单词及其派生词、常用写作考点短语和例句为主。

语法重点部分讲解考生在写作过程中必须掌握的语法规则，预备级侧重词性讲解，初级侧重简单句型讲解。

衔接方式部分讲解写作中常见的衔接词和逻辑关系词的用法，每个级别均在最后 1 个单元对前 9 个单元所学的衔接方式进行回顾和复习。

题型讲解

该部分参照雅思考试的写作题型包括大作文（Task 2）和小作文（Task 1）两部分。

大作文部分的话题与单元主题密切相关，所选取的大部分题目都是雅思考试真题。预备级主要讲解根据题目可以拓展的观点论据及可以用到的词汇和例句，初级则侧重讲解文章结构的搭

建、段落组织、每个段落中句子的作用等。讲解之后均设有相应的练习，预备级侧重训练考生遣词造句的能力，初级侧重训练考生组织段落的能力。

小作文部分讲解了 7 种图表类型，按照图表题目的难度和考试频率，每个级别都包含各 2 个单元的曲线图题、表格题、柱状图题和各 1 个单元的饼状图题、混合图题、流程图题和地图题，所有题目均贴合单元话题。预备级侧重词汇及句式表达的讲解和练习，初级则侧重文章结构及段落划分的讲解和练习。

课后练习

该部分包含 3 个练习，既包括与大作文和小作文题型相关的练习，也有对本单元所学能力进行巩固强化的练习。本部分的练习难度稍高，与之前的练习形成互补，以满足考生的进阶需求。预备级侧重词汇和句子表达的练习，初级的练习包括词汇、句子和文章，小作文练习大多以完整文章的形式呈现。

学术类（A 类）雅思考试概述

雅思考试分为四门科目：听力、阅读、口语和写作。考试时间共计约 2 小时 44 分钟。听力、阅读和写作测试必须在 1 天之内完成，口语测试可根据考试中心的安排在其他各项测试之前或之后的 7 天内完成。每一科目都独立评分，综合得分取四门科目的平均分。雅思成绩单上将列出考生每一科目的得分以及综合得分。雅思考试满分为 9 分。成绩有效期为 2 年。

听力

听力考试时长约为 30 分钟，另有 10 分钟用于誊写答案。录音只播放 1 遍，但题目之间会留给考生读题和记录答案的时间。考生将听到不同的英语口音和方言。一共有 4 段录音，第 1 段（Part 1）为两人对话（如关于旅行安排的对话），第 2 段（Part 2）为独白（如介绍博物馆开放时间的独白），第 3 段（Part 3）为 2~4 人的对话（如老师和学生关于作业的讨论），第 4 段（Part 4）为独白（如一般学术话题的讲座）。每段录音设置 10 道题目，考查难度一般来说逐步增加。问题的排列顺序和答案在录音中出现的顺序一致。4 段录音中，前 2 段为日常生活场景，后 2 段基于校园和学术场景展开。

阅读

阅读考试时长为 60 分钟，共有 3 篇文章，40 道题目。每篇文章设置的问题数量并不相同。阅读考试中所出现的文章是由真实的文章改写而成的。这些文章来源于诸如杂志、书籍和报纸等途径，与考生未来在大学课程中将阅读到的文章极为相似。文章的写作方式多样，包含记叙文、说明文、议论文等文体。文章的内容包含即将学习本科、研究生课程或进行职业注册的考生所感兴趣的、与其认知程度相符的常见话题。其中，至少 1 篇文章会出现详尽的论述形式。所有文章总计长度约在 2,000 到 2,750 词之间。

写作

写作考试时长为60分钟，包括小作文（Task 1）和大作文（Task 2）。Task 1 要求考生根据给出的数据图形、地图或者流程图写 1 篇至少 150 词的文章，考查考生描述、分析和比较数据，以及总结图形主要特征和要点的能力，建议用时 20 分钟。Task 2 要求考生针对某个问题或观点写 1 篇至少 250 词的文章，考查考生使用恰当语体及语域（包括词汇、语法等）讨论问题并加以论证的能力，建议用时 40 分钟。

口语

口语考试时长为 11~14 分钟。考试采用一对一的面试形式，考查考生日常会话、对熟悉话题作一定长度的描述以及与考官之间互动的能力。口语考试分为 3 个部分：第 1 部分（Part 1）为简介及问答，主要考查考生在英语语境中对日常生活中耳熟能详的话题的表达能力；第 2 部分（Part 2）为个人陈述，考官会交给考生 1 张任务卡，卡片上给出 1 个话题和需要陈述的要点，考生根据卡片进行 1~2 分钟的陈述，考官会在最后提问 1~2 个问题；第 3 部分（Part 3）则是根据前 2 个部分的表现，由考官适当提一些更深层次的问题。

Map of the book

	Listening		Reading	
Unit 6 Globalisation and Culture	1 词汇基础 / 001	3 题型讲解 / 004	1 词汇基础 / 008	3 题型讲解 / 014
	2 能力培养 / 003	3.1 高频场景 / 004	2 能力培养 / 010	单项选择题
	2.1 了解匹配题 / 003	3.2 题型演练 / 005	掌握应对文章生词的方法（一）	4 课后练习 / 017
	2.2 解题步骤 / 003	4 课后练习 / 006		
	2.3 巩固练习 / 003			
Unit 7 Doing Business	1 词汇基础 / 040	3 题型讲解 / 044	1 词汇基础 / 047	3 题型讲解 / 052
	2 能力培养 / 041	3.1 高频场景 / 044	2 能力培养 / 049	多项选择题
	2.1 了解地图题 / 041	3.2 题型演练 / 044	掌握应对文章生词的方法（二）	4 课后练习 / 056
	2.2 解题步骤 / 041	4 课后练习 / 045		
	2.3 巩固练习 / 042			
Unit 8 Ecosystem	1 词汇基础 / 076	3 题型讲解 / 080	1 词汇基础 / 083	3 题型讲解 / 090
	2 能力培养 / 077	3.1 高频场景 / 080	2 能力培养 / 086	小标题匹配题（一）
	2.1 了解流程图题 / 077	3.2 题型演练 / 080	文章逻辑结构分析（一）	4 课后练习 / 094
	2.2 解题步骤 / 077	4 课后练习 / 082		
	2.3 巩固练习 / 078			
Unit 9 Wildlife	1 词汇基础 / 115	3 题型讲解 / 118	1 词汇基础 / 121	3 题型讲解 / 126
	2 能力培养 / 117	3.1 高频场景 / 118	2 能力培养 / 123	小标题匹配题（二）
	2.1 抓取信号词 / 117	3.2 题型演练 / 118	文章逻辑结构分析（二）	4 课后练习 / 130
	2.2 抓取信号词的步骤 / 117	4 课后练习 / 119		
	2.3 巩固练习 / 117			
Unit 10 Across the Universe	1 词汇基础 / 153	3 题型讲解 / 156	1 词汇基础 / 161	3 题型讲解 / 168
	2 能力培养 / 155	3.1 高频场景 / 156	2 能力培养 / 164	小结
	2.1 地图题注意事项 / 155	3.2 题型演练 / 157	小结	4 课后练习 / 173
	2.2 流程图题注意事项 / 155	4 课后练习 / 159		
	2.3 巩固练习 / 155			
Audio Scripts	196~204			
Answers	204~213			

Speaking

1 词汇基础 / 020
2 能力培养 / 021
2.1 语法训练——主语从句 / 021
2.2 发音训练——音的同化和弱读 / 022
3 话题讲解 / 024
3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——娱乐休闲类 / 024
3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——节日类 / 025
4 课后练习 / 027

1 词汇基础 / 058
2 能力培养 / 058
2.1 语法训练——宾语从句 / 058
2.2 发音训练——意群和句子的停顿 / 059
3 话题讲解 / 061
3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——工作类 / 061
3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——商业类 / 062
4 课后练习 / 063

1 词汇基础 / 096
2 能力培养 / 096
2.1 语法训练——定语从句 / 096
2.2 发音训练——句子的重音 / 098
3 话题讲解 / 100
3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——植物类 / 100
3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——自然类 / 101
4 课后练习 / 102

1 词汇基础 / 133
2 能力培养 / 133
2.1 语法训练——状语从句 / 133
2.2 发音训练——降调 / 136
3 话题讲解 / 137
3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——动物类 / 137
3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——地点类 / 139
4 课后练习 / 140

1 词汇基础 / 176
2 能力培养 / 177
2.1 语法训练——it 型强调句扩展用法 / 177
2.2 发音训练——升调 / 178
3 话题讲解 / 179
3.1 雅思口语 Part 1——抽象类 / 179
3.2 雅思口语 Part 2——事件类 / 181
4 课后练习 / 183

Writing

1 词汇基础 / 028
2 能力培养 / 028
2.1 词汇表达 / 028
核心单词及其派生词；常用短语；句型及例句
2.2 语法重点 / 030
主谓一致
2.3 衔接方式 / 031
including；clearly；alternatively；simultaneously；what is more；to give an illustration of this
3 题型讲解 / 033
3.1 全球化类话题 / 033
3.2 柱状图 2 / 036
4 课后练习 / 038

1 词汇基础 / 064
2 能力培养 / 064
2.1 词汇表达 / 064
核心单词及其派生词；常用短语；句型及例句
2.2 语法重点 / 066
被动语态；被动语态在写作中的用法
2.3 衔接方式 / 068
in fact；on top of...；what is worse；for one thing...for another...；on the whole；fortunately
3 题型讲解 / 069
3.1 商业类话题 / 069
3.2 流程图 / 072
4 课后练习 / 074

1 词汇基础 / 103
2 能力培养 / 103
2.1 词汇表达 / 103
核心单词及其派生词；常用短语；句型及例句
2.2 语法重点 / 105
there be 句型
2.3 衔接方式 / 106
as a matter of fact；overall；in short；to sum up；in conclusion；to conclude
3 题型讲解 / 108
3.1 环境保护类话题 / 108
3.2 地图 / 110
4 课后练习 / 112

1 词汇基础 / 141
2 能力培养 / 141
2.1 词汇表达 / 141
核心单词及其派生词；常用短语；句型及例句
2.2 语法重点 / 143
it 型强调句；it 作形式主语
2.3 衔接方式 / 145
after all；above all；first and foremost；to illustrate this；in other words；in a word
3 题型讲解 / 146
3.1 动植物类话题 / 146
3.2 饼状图 / 149
4 课后练习 / 151

1 词汇基础 / 184
2 能力培养 / 184
2.1 词汇表达 / 184
核心单词及其派生词；常用短语；句型及例句
2.2 语法重点 / 186
小结
2.3 衔接方式 / 187
小结
3 题型讲解 / 189
3.1 宇宙探索类话题 / 189
3.2 混合图 / 191
4 课后练习 / 193

Unit 6 Globalisation and Culture

Listening

1 词汇基础

1.1 请听一段对话，从方框中选择正确的选项填入空白处。

A Italy　　B India　　C polite　　D false

Cultures	British	1 _____
Always say 'please' and 'thank you'	2 _____	3 _____

1.2 请选出画线词或短语的同义表达。

1 My Indian friend speaks English with an accent.

A local language

B wrong word

C special pronunciation

2 The price of vegetables altered significantly due to the import control.

A increased

B decreased

C changed

3 Mr Lance gave an enlightening talk at the international conference.

A inspiring

B passionate

C negative

4 Shelly experienced culture shock when she first arrived in London.

A being excited to know a new culture

B being confused about an unfamiliar culture

C refusing to accept another culture

1.3 请把左侧单词与右侧意思相近的表达相匹配。

1 bride	A a woman on her wedding day
2 groom	B clothes
3 custom	C a man on his wedding day
4 costume	D traditional culture
5 backpack	E a case that is carried with hands
6 suitcase	F place
7 region	G a bag that is carried on the back

场景词汇

accent /'æksent/ *n.* 口音

tongue /tʌŋ/ *n.* 舌头；语言

afford /ə'fɔ:d/ *v.* 买得起；提供

alter /'ɔ:ltə(r)/ *v.* 改变

arrange /ə'reɪndʒ/ *v.* 安排

property /'prɒpəti/ *n.* 财产

commercial /kə'mɜ:ʃl/ *adj.* 商业的

accountant /ə'kaʊntənt/ *n.* 会计

wedding /'wedɪŋ/ *n.* 婚礼

bride /braɪd/ *n.* 新娘

groom /gru:m/ *n.* 新郎

communication /kə,mju:nɪ'keɪʃn/ *n.* 交流

clash /klæʃ/ *n.* 冲突

emotion /ɪ'məʊʃn/ *n.* 情感

religion /rɪ'lɪdʒən/ *n.* 宗教

custom /'kʌstəm/ *n.* 习俗

costume /'kɒstju:m/ *n.* 服装

impact /'ɪmpækt/ *n.* 影响

housing /'haʊzɪŋ/ *n.* 住房

globalisation /,gləʊbəlaɪ'zeɪʃn/ *n.* 全球化

trade /treɪd/ *n.* 贸易

silence /'saɪləns/ *n.* 寂静

scenery /'si:nəri/ *n.* 风景

enlightening /ɪn'laɪtnɪŋ/ *adj.* 具有启发性的

false /fɔ:ls/ *adj.* 假的，不真实的

massive /'mæsɪv/ *adj.* 大量的

incredible /ɪn'kredəbl/ *adj.* 难以置信的

odd /ɒd/ *adj.* 古怪的

polite /pə'laɪt/ *adj.* 礼貌的

rough /rʌf/ *adj.* 粗略的

groundwater /'graʊndwɔ:tə(r)/ *n.* 地下水

Malaysia /mə'leɪʒə/ *n.* 马来西亚

water quality 水质

case study 个案研究

popular culture 通俗文化

culture shock 文化冲击

2 能力培养

2.1 了解匹配题

匹配题一般出现在雅思听力考试的Part 2和Part 3中，偶尔出现在Part 1中。匹配题有三种常见形式：选项数量多于空格数量、选项数量等于空格数量、选项数量少于空格数量。无论什么形式的匹配题，题目顺序和相关信息在录音中出现的顺序都是一致的。

2.2 解题步骤

❶ 读题目要求，判断匹配题的形式。若是选项数量少于空格数量，说明选项可用多次；若是选项数量多于空格数量，说明有多余的选项。

❷ 圈出题干与选项中的关键词。如果时间允许，可以用中文或符号进行翻译或标注，帮助提高反应速度。

❸ 听录音，记笔记。注意信号词，例如表示重点、转折、否定、比较、并列、条件、时间等的词语，答案可能出现在信号词附近。

❹ 按照题目顺序做题，不要跳题。

❺ 听完录音后，利用笔记确定答案。注意检查答案是否与题目要求一致，避免错选、多选和漏选。

Tips

匹配题中常出现同义替换现象，即录音原文通常不会与题干或选项完全一致，因此做题时不要只盯着题干或选项，要注意理解录音原文的意思。

2.3 巩固练习

练习1 请看题目，判断该匹配题的形式，并圈出题目中的关键词，可以进行翻译标记。

What are the functions of the different sites in the Forest Park Campsite?

*Choose **FIVE** answers from the box and write the correct letter, **A–G**, next to Questions 1–5.*

Functions

A see collections of rare plants
B look for lost children
C have swimming classes
D have dancing classes
E meet with children's tutor
F listen to music
G see latest films

1 The Field _____
2 Stage 2 _____
3 Riverside _____
4 Green Lounge _____
5 Gateway _____

练习2 **请看题目，判断该匹配题的形式，并圈出题目中的关键词。可与学习伙伴配合，一个人用英文说出选项和题干，另一个人快速翻译出选项和题干的意思。**

Which type of the house is in accord with the comments?

*Choose **FOUR** answers from the box and write the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**, next to Questions 1–4.*

Types

A partially underground houses

B underground houses

C traditional houses

Comments

1 getting praised _____

2 low insurance cost _____

3 luxurious accommodation _____

4 energy efficiency _____

练习3 **请尽可能多地写出与以下单词意思相近的表达。**

1 partially _____

2 traditional _____

3 comment _____

4 low-cost _____

5 luxurious _____

3 题型讲解

3.1 高频场景

一般来说，全球化指以经济全球化为核心，包含各国、各地区、各民族在政治、文化、科技、军事、安全、意识形态、价值观念、生活方式等多层次、多领域的相互联系、影响、制约的多元概念。伴随全球化进程出现了很多机遇，如跨国公司的出现、国际贸易的持续增长、国际旅游的发展、文化的融合与创新等；与此同时也出现了一些问题，如强势文化的影响、全球性的经济危机、文化多样性的减少、环境污染加剧等。全球化场景多出现在雅思听力考试Part 4中，一般以讲座的形式呈现，内容比较复杂，难度也较

大，需要考生平常多关注时事，并积累经济学、社会学、环境学等学科的相关词汇。该场景下的高频考点包括：

- 全球化的利弊
- 跨国公司案例
- 环境污染
- 国际学生
- 经济危机
- 跨国旅游
- 文化冲击

3.2 题型演练

练习1 **请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。**

What impact does tourism development have on the local area?

*Choose **THREE** answers from the box and write the correct letter, **A–G**, next to Questions 1–3.*

A People find it hard to afford a house.
B The salary decreases.
C The profit varies on different days.
D It's better to rent than to buy a house.
E There may be traffic jams on the way to the city centre.
F Foreign companies compete with local businesses.
G Weather will not be concerned.

1 traffic _____

2 housing _____

3 business _____

练习2 **请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。**

Which group has the following characteristics when communicating?

*Choose **SEVEN** answers from the box and write the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**, next to Questions 1–7.*

A 'open' cultures
B 'closed' cultures
C cultures between 'open' and 'closed'

1 They will easily show they are angry or happy.

_____

2 They don't like to express their feelings at work.

_____

3 They are less modest.

_____

4 They seldom use body language.

_____

5 They only look at your eyes for a while during the talk.

_____

6 They like to interrupt others' speaking.

_____

7 There will be more pauses in the conversation.

_____

4 课后练习

4.1 请听四段对话，并按照题目要求作答。

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 How is the food in Malaysia?

A the same as Indian food　　B very mild　　C very spicy

2 What's the most common type of house in Canadian cities?

A apartment　　B house　　C studio

3 What language do people from West Switzerland speak?

A German　　B French　　C Italian

4 What characteristic does NOT a Saree have?

A It has many colours.　　B It can be made of silk.　　C It has golden decorations.

4.2 请看题目，判断题目类型，然后圈出题目中的关键词。

Questions 1–3

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 What did NOT Anderson mention about Argentina?

A culture　　B industry　　C landscape

2 What strange food did Anderson eat?

A crocodile　　B snake　　C centipede

3 What accident happened when Anderson travelled around?

A He got injured.
B He fell into the water when he took a boat.
C Nothing really bad happened.

Questions 4 and 5

What's the difference between tourists and travellers?

*Choose **TWO** answers from the box and write the correct letter, **A–D**, next to Questions 4 and 5.*

A They don't like travelling too far.
B They will carry backpacks.
C They always look for excitement.
D They look different to local residents in a place.

4 travellers _____

5 tourists _____

4.3 请听一段对话，并按照要求完成4.2中的题目。

4.4 请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。

Which language has / had the following characters?

*Choose **FIVE** answers from the box and write the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**, next to Questions 1–5.*

Languages

A Cornish
B Welsh
C Gaelic

1 Relevant data is hard to find. _____

2 The language was a requirement at school in the past. _____

3 The number of speakers is growing. _____

4 Few people can speak it fluently. _____

5 The language has the most fluent speakers. _____

Reading

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据图片判断其对应的场景属于哪个国家，并将国家名称填入空白处。



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____



6 _____

1.2 请从方框中选择正确的单词填入空白处。

constant	incompatible	unique	identical	ancient

1 The canal was so splendid that we were deeply awed by the wisdom of the _____ predecessors.

2 You cannot find any architecture in this style anymore, because the _____ material was produced only in this country centuries ago.

3 Don't assume that you are completely _____ with people from other cultures without trying to understand them.

4 Culture is not a fixed phenomenon. It is experiencing _____ adaptation and reconstruction.

5 Walking down the lane, you cannot find two _____ houses at all since they are all colourful with characteristic graffiti on the walls.

1.3 请阅读下面的四个段落，将不同国家的习俗或活动与其特点相匹配。

Finger-pulling in Germany

Fingerhalken, or finger-pulling, is a sport which originated in Germany or Austria and is taken very seriously by people living in the area. The game is highly competitive and involves two men

sitting opposite each other at a table with a leather rope. The aim of the game is to pull the other man over the table. Every year, a Fingerhalken tournament takes place in Germany. According to German folklore, Fingerhalken is an ancient way of settling arguments. Competitors who take part in the game need to demonstrate a high tolerance of pain, concentration, and finger strength, which is far more difficult than it may seem. In some extreme cases, Fingerhalken tournaments can get aggressive and people have been known to dislocate or break their fingers. Obviously, Germans and Austrians see this as being more than just a game.

Songkran in Thailand

Marking Thailand's New Year, the Songkran Festival falls on 13 April every year, which is celebrated by the whole country. During this three-day holiday, the Thai people get together with their family, visit the temple, and most excitingly, take part in water fights. People go out onto the street and splash basins of water on their family members, friends, neighbours and even strangers as a way of sending wishes. Some 'water weapons' such as water pistols, water hoses are widely used by fun-seekers.

Cheese-rolling in England

Cheese-rolling is a tradition that takes place every year at Cooper's Hill in England. If that sounds strange to you, you're not alone. Many people find it bizarre that local residents chase a huge rolling wheel of cheese down an extremely steep hill. Cheese-rolling is a festival that was conceived by people from Gloucestershire as an annual celebration for their rural way of life. In recent years, the event has become a global phenomenon and people flock from far and wide to take part in it. The tournament is fraught with danger though — cheese-chasers can get seriously injured in the process.

Kite-flying in China

Kite-flying is a prevailing entertainment well received by both adults and children in spring in China. The kite was once used as a means to transmit battlefield information during wartime. However, it has gradually lost its military functions and become one of the most representative crafts of traditional Chinese culture. On the third Saturday of April each year, there is a kite festival going on in Weifang, Shandong Province. Weifang enjoys the reputation of the World Kite Capital with a history of making and flying kites for about 2,400 years. A great number of kite enthusiasts are found in this city and so Weifang is the headquarters of the International Kite Federation.

1 Finger-pulling	A a way to bring people good fortune
2 Pouring water	B a former method to deliver military messages
3 Cheese-rolling	C a custom to celebrate the joyous rural life
4 Kite-flying	D a traditional and sometimes tough method to handle disputes

1.4 请画出文章中的生词和短语，通过词典确认它们的含义，并写下来。

_____

_____

主题词汇

reform /rɪ'fɔ:m/ *v.* 改革

differ /'dɪfə(r)/ *v.* 不同于

unite /ju'naɪt/ *v.* 团结；联合

greet /gri:t/ *v.* 欢迎；迎接

bridge /brɪdʒ/ *v.* 消除（分歧）

prejudice /'predʒudɪs/ *n.* 偏见

stereotype /'steriətaɪp/ *n.* 刻板印象

originality /əˌrɪdʒə'nælәti/ *n.* 独创性

cosmopolitan /ˌkɒzmə'pɒlɪtən/ *adj.* 世界性的

trend /trend/ *n.* 趋势

unique /ju'ni:k/ *adj.* 独特的

compatible /kəm'pætəbl/ *adj.* 能共存的；关系好的

incompatible /ˌɪnkəm'pætəbl/ *adj.* 不相容的；关系不好的

thorough /'θʌrə/ *adj.* 彻底的

ally /'ælaɪ/ *n.* 盟友

cooperation /kəuˌɒpə'reɪʃn/ *n.* 合作

earth village 地球村

transnational corporation 跨国公司

joint venture 合资企业

cultural diversity 文化多样性

2 能力培养

掌握应对文章生词的方法（一）

雅思阅读文章的篇幅长、难度高、专业性强，阅读时可能常常会遇到生词。可以说，在雅思阅读考试中，词汇量是影响阅读成绩的关键因素之一，而生词是大多数考生在雅思阅读考试中面临的最大问题。所以掌握一些应对生词的技巧有助于我们在阅读过程中判断生词的含义，减少阅读障碍。同时，由于雅思考试是对实际语言能力的测试，专业词汇或俚语并非考查的重点，因此不必过于关注这些方面的词汇量。

根据上下文信息判断单词的含义是阅读中最常用的技巧之一，通常包含以下三种情况：

❶ 当句子或段落的作用是解释某个定义或功能的时候，可以根据句子本身的内容来判断生词的含义。例如：Industrialism is an economic and social system based on industry. 由Industrialism后的解释可知，它就是“以工业为基础的经济和社会制度”，即“工业主义”的意思。

Tips

常见的表示定义的关键词包括be，mean，refer to，define等；常见的表示改述的关键词包括similarly，likewise，that is (to say)，to put it simply，in other words等。同位语、定语从句、破折号、冒号和括号等句式结构或标点符号在很多情况下也表示改述。

❷ 当句中出现改述（paraphrase），即补充说明前文信息时，也能够据此判断生词的含义。例如：Monsoon, one of the most common seasonal winds we encounter, is the main cause of storms. monsoon后面的同位语成分进一步说明了monsoon是一种季风。

❸ 句中出现的举例或列举关系也是获取生词含义的重要线索。例如：Epochal events in history would definitely include the Discovery of America and the Industrial Revolution. 看到句子后面出现的“发现美洲”和“工业革命”两个重大历史事件后，可以推测出epochal表示“重大的”，这和它的本义“划时代的”非常接近。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The Early Silk Road

People have been trading goods since the dawn of civilisation, but it wasn't until the 1st century BC that trade in luxury goods between China and Europe began, with goods flowing from the Asian continent to Rome. This early trading route between the two civilisations stretched for thousands of miles and was called the Silk Road. It was during this time that trade started to become a global affair.

However, this doesn't mean it was the start of modern globalisation. Silk, itself, was mostly luxurious, as were the spices that were frequently part of the trade exchanges between Asia and Europe. In terms of the overall economy, these exports constituted a tiny proportion of revenue, but many intermediaries were involved in ensuring that the goods reached their destination. Despite the small economic benefits, global trade links were established and those who took advantage of global trade made a fortune, with traders making a huge profit as a consequence of various transactions that took place. The prosperity of the Silk Road was made possible by the economic power of the two great empires that dominated much of the route. Trade continued uninterruptedly for much of the time. Then, the Silk Road experienced a decline. It wasn't until almost a century later when a new dynasty in China, the Yuan Dynasty, became the dominant global power that the Silk Road was allowed to re-open. As was so often the case, the Silk Road flourished when the interested parties offered it protection.

1 根据上下文及相关背景知识写出下列表达的中文含义，并指出判断依据。

1) the Silk Road _____

2) transaction _____

2 请根据上下文判断下列单词在文中的含义，并选出其近义词。

1) revenue

A income　B population　C tax　D percentage

2) intermediaries

A murderers　B lawyers　C policemen　D middlemen

3) transactions

A deals　B goods　C discussions　D agreements

4) flourished

A stopped　　B prospered　　C disappeared　　D started

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Spice Route

The new religion of Islam spread from its Arabian heartland in the 7th century. So did trade. By the early 9th century, Islamic traders had come to dominate the economic area of Mediterranean and Indian Ocean, with some spreading as far east as Indonesia and as far west as Moorish Spain.

The main commodity traded during the Middle Ages was spices, which, unlike silk, had been traded over the sea since ancient times. By the medieval era, they had become the main focus of international trade, with cloves, nutmeg and mace from the fabled Spice Islands being the most common spices traded along the route. Such commodities were hugely expensive, yet the demand for these, in Europe particularly, remained high. Even so, spices were regarded as a luxury, which meant sales remained low in comparison to other commodities.

1 Where is the farthest west place that Islamic traders reached?

A Indonesia　　B Arabian heartland　　C Moorish Spain　　D Indian Ocean

2 According to the text, which of the following statements is correct?

A Islamic trade spread to the world in the 7th century.

B Silk had been a famous commodity traded over the sea since ancient times.

C The best-selling product traded around the Middle Ages was silk.

D Spices had occupied the largest proportion among all the goods being traded at that time.

3 请根据上下文，猜一猜方框中的单词在文中的含义，或其大致类别。然后通过词典确认它们的词义，并写下来。

heartland　　Mediterranean　　commodity　　clove　　nutmeg　　mace

任务3 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Age of Discovery

Global trade really began during the Age of Discovery. From the end of the 15th century

onwards, European explorers began to make contact with the East and the West, during which time they accidentally discovered America. Following the 'Scientific Revolution' in the fields of astronomy, mechanics, physics and shipping, colonists from European countries including Portugal and Spain in the first place, and later the Netherlands and England, 'discovered', then conquered, and finally integrated parts of this new continent into their economies.

The Age of Discovery had transformational effects on the world. Christopher Columbus is perhaps the most well-known of these early explorers, having discovered America. This discovery, however, led to the collapse of pre-Columbian civilisations. Another significant exploration was Magellan's journey around the globe, which opened the door to the Spice Islands, skipping the middlemen from Europe and the Arabic world and making them redundant. Though trade at this time wasn't a huge contributor to overall GDP, it had significant effects on people's life. The introduction of potatoes, tomatoes, coffee, and chocolate in Europe had sweeping consequences for the economy and the price of spices fell steeply.

However, economists today still don't regard this era as the birth of globalisation. While trade undoubtedly became global at this point and was a large factor in the birth of the Age of Discovery, the global economy was still very much lopsided. Trade took place on a global scale but was only within the colonising empires and not beyond. Moreover, the colonial model was predominantly a kind of exploitation, which included the shameful legacy of slavery. The consequence of this was a mercantilist, imperialist global economic order but not a truly globalised one.

1 根据上下文写出下列表达的中文含义，并指出判断依据。

1) integrate _____ 2) redundant _____

3) lopsided _____ 4) exploitation _____

2 What is the influence of Magellan's journey?

A It ended Columbus' success in discovering America.

B It boosted the science development in every field.

C It built a direct trading connection with the Spice Islands.

D It led to the collapse of pre-Columbian civilisations.

3 Why do NOT economists regard the Age of Discovery as the birth of globalisation?

A Global trade is a major factor in the birth of the Age of Discovery.

B Global trade contributed little to the overall GDP.

C Merchants transported goods in a very low-efficient way.

D Global economy was still confined to limited areas.

3 题型讲解

单项选择题

选择题是雅思阅读考试中的高频题型。选择题分为单项选择题和多项选择题，其中单项选择题是必考的题型，也是许多考生失分的主要题型之一。

在单项选择题中，除了最后一题可能是考查全文主旨大意的题目之外，其他通常都是考查细节信息的题目。解题时首先要注意阅读题干，然后根据关键词定位题目信息所在的段落，选出四个选项中的正确答案。读题时，关注题干信息是重中之重，尤其要注意题干中是否包含有否定意义的表达，例如except，doesn't，didn't，wrong等。如果忽略了这些信息，极有可能导致选择错误的答案。选项内容大多是由原文同义替换而来的，但很多时候看似与原文非常接近的选项并不一定是正确答案，而是干扰项。单选题题目出现的顺序通常都与文章内容的顺序一致，因此在遇到较难的题目时可以先选择跳过，完成其他题目之后再根据文章内容的顺序从相关部分确定剩余题目的答案。

Tips

对于较难的题目，有时通过排除法反而更容易得到正确答案。

任务1 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

The Globalisation of Work and People

What fundamentally transforms work is extraordinary connectivity

In the next few years, more than half of the world's population will rely on a mobile device to download information, access knowledge, and interact with their peers. In some instances, this will provide immense benefits for certain individuals, no matter what their backgrounds are. It will enable these people to become part of a vast network of global talent. The beneficiaries will be the ones who make the most of the chance to compete with others, and this will continuously increase the benchmark of what it takes to succeed.

This will induce two main consequences: the hollowing out of work and the globalisation of digital labour.

Hollowing out of work

One of the most immediate effects of this change is the disappearance of traditional jobs, particularly middle-wage, middle-skilled jobs such as managers, secretaries, or assembly line workers. These jobs are moving towards other regions as they require lower wages, or the workers are replaced by technology.

So what is left is the jobs at both ends of the skill and wage spectrum. At one end we still see the high-skilled, high-wage jobs in professions like finance, law, engineering, or IT. These professions require complex knowledge and expertise which technology cannot deal with. As a result, such jobs are very highly paid.

At the other end of the spectrum, we can still see low-skilled, low-wage jobs like refuse collectors, caterers, bank tellers, and shop assistants. It's hard to do these jobs with technology. But because these skills are easy to acquire, there is always a large supply of labour. As a result, the wages will remain low.

Globalisation of digital labour

Currently, Western nations have a significant economic advantage in terms of education, but this will be rapidly eroded by the rise of online education platforms like MIT's OpenCourseWare, Open Yale Courses, iTunes U, and Khan Academy. All of these platforms have been designed to link up students from all over the world, providing similar educational experiences and qualifications.

The consequences of this will be huge, as impoverished villagers in the developing world will have the same opportunities as their peers in the West. Having an education provides you with work opportunities, but it doesn't answer the question of what jobs will be available. What will a highly-educated person from the developing world be qualified to do? The answer appears to be that most of the work we do in the future will shift to the online realm. In that sense, an individual's work prospect and wealth won't be determined by the state of the national economy, as the virtual market will supersede national economies.

As of now, platforms like Upwork and Guru can connect seekers of specialised skills to sellers of these skills, providing access to a whole range of online and Internet-oriented expertise. These platforms are a far more efficient and cost-effective way of allocating skills. One possible outcome of this is that the most sought-after jobs will shift towards regions of the world where the most qualified people happen to live.

1 请画出下列描述中的关键词，并在文中找到表达相同意思的内容。

1) the requirement for people to be successful in the globalised world

2) jobs that belong to the lower end of the work spectrum

3) elements that undermine the advantage of Western education

4) examples of platforms where all kinds of expertise can be found

2 *Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.*

1) According to the text, who will be the beneficiary in the future?

A those who work in fields such as law and engineering

B those who work in the middle of the work spectrum

C those who have expertise in one special field

D those who keep contesting with others and promoting themselves

2) The following occupations are located in the lower end of the work spectrum EXCEPT

A caterers. B secretaries. C shop assistants. D bank tellers.

3) Who will benefit the most from platforms like MIT's OpenCourseWare and Khan Academy?

A students of developing countries
B children from a middle-class family
C students in universities like MIT and Yale
D IT workers

4) What could you find from the platforms like Upwork?

A the latest fashion trend
B an online coach who can teach you interviewing skills
C a list of the nearest taxi drivers
D calendars of all festivals throughout the year

任务2 **请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。**

The Roots of Carnival

The end of the Christmas season in the Caribbean marks the beginning of a new festival, when islanders dance in the street and begin Carnival: a wild celebration that culminates on Fat Tuesday. In the US, that day and this celebration are known as Mardi Gras.

If we study the carnival from an anthropological perspective, we will find that it is a ritual to go through winter to summer. It was once supposed that winter had to be expelled so that summer could have the opportunity to come back. The carnival was thus deemed as a significant period to celebrate the transition from darkness to light.

Also, the Carnival was one of the very few moments for people to binge, because by the end of winter the food storage left was usually about to be eaten up. Or if was not consumed, food preserved long enough towards the coming fertile spring would inevitably decompose.

It is estimated by historians that the first 'modern' Caribbean Carnival started in Trinidad and Tobago towards the end of the 1700s when a number of French colonists brought the Fat Tuesday masquerade party tradition with them to the island. However, it is almost certain that the festivities go back much further than this.

By the start of the 1700s, many of the black slaves had been freed from their colonial masters and walked freely among them, along with earlier Spanish and British settlers. This led to the result that Carnival went from being a European celebration to a more diverse one, with people from a range of ethnic groups contributing to the celebration. When slavery was finally abolished in 1834, the free citizens of the island could outwardly celebrate their native culture and their freedom through fashion, music, and dancing.

The three aspects of Carnival that continue to be of great importance are dressing in masquerade, music, and dance. All of this happens at elaborate balls, drawing on European customs, as well as in the streets according to African traditions, with costumes, masks, feathers,

headgear, dancing, music, steel bands, and drums all making up this fun festival.

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.*

1 What is the name for Carnival in the US?

A Mardi Gras B Easter C Fat Tuesday D Christmas

2 From the perspective of anthropology, the carnival is the following EXCEPT

A a transition from darkness to light. B a transition from death to birth.

C a transition from food shortage to abundance. D a transition from winter to summer.

3 According to historians, what is closely related to the first modern Caribbean Carnival?

A a moment for people to revel B the celebration of the harvest

C the Fat Tuesday masquerade party tradition D the end of Christmas and a new beginning

4 Which of the following statements is correct?

A The earliest Carnival occurred after the 1700s.

B Many of the slaves had been freed before the slavery was officially abandoned.

C As time passed by, Carnival obtained more European colours.

D Slavery was abolished by the start of the 1700s.

5 Nowadays, the key elements of Carnival include the following EXCEPT

A tradition. B music. C dance. D dressing in masquerade.

4 课后练习

请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The First Wave of Globalisation

A The first wave of globalisation can be traced back to the 19th century, ending at the start of the First World War. By the late 1700s, Great Britain had established itself as a globally dominant power, as the British Empire spread over a vast expanse of the world, with its technological dominance evident in innovations like the steam engine, the flying shuttle, and spinning jenny. This all took place during the First Industrial Revolution era.

B The 'British' Industrial Revolution kick-started an era of massive global commerce. The innovation of steamships and trains meant goods could be sent over thousands of miles, both within a nation and beyond. Further, industrialisation gave Britain a major competitive advantage in exporting goods like iron, textiles, and manufactured goods. 'With its

advanced industrial technologies,' the BBC recently reported during an analysis of the era, 'Britain was able to attack a huge and rapidly expanding international market.'

C The consequence was the first wave of globalisation. Up until that period, trade had been growing at an average of 3% per year. Exports rose from a share of 6% of global GDP at the beginning of the 19th century to more than doubling that prior to 1914. The renowned economist John Maynard Keynes once noted: 'The inhabitant of London could order various products of the whole Earth, in such quantity as he might see fit, by telephone, sipping his morning tea in bed, and reasonably expect his early delivery upon his doorstep.'

D It was also possible, as Keynes observed, to invest money in global stocks with relative ease, with the wealthy from America and Europe able to invest freely in internationally active joint stock companies. One of these organisations, the French Compagnie de Suez, was responsible for building the Suez Canal, which linked the Mediterranean with the Indian Ocean, creating routes for the world trade. Huge infrastructure projects were undertaken in India and Africa as a result of foreign direct investment.

E Although Britain benefited the most from globalisation, due to its strength in capital and technology, other nations also benefited from being able to export goods. The 1870s saw another invention which would transform global trade: the refrigerated cargo ship. This allowed countries in Latin America to enter their own golden age of trade, as they began to export meat from cattle grazed on their vast terrain in large quantities. Other nations started to thrive as a consequence of exporting specialised products.

F However, the first wave of globalisation and industrialisation came to an end in a destructive way. Towards the end of the 19th century, most globalising and industrialised European countries were carving up the African continent, with Ethiopia being the only country that hadn't been colonised. Similarly, Western powers made it almost impossible for some nations to pursue independent development, or they outcompeted them due to their greater access to capital and superior technology. Lastly, the industrial labour class in globalised nations also did not benefit from globalisation, as either their work was turned into a commodity by industrial machinery, or they were forced to subsist on low wages.

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.*

1 According to the text, which of the following was NOT invented by the late 1700s?

A steam engine **B** refrigerated cargo ship

C flying shuttle **D** spinning jenny

2 The following goods in the Industrial Revolution era were prevalent EXCEPT

A cotton. **B** iron. **C** manufactured goods. **D** textiles.

3 What was the rough share of exports of global GDP around 1914?

A 3%　　B 6%　　C 12%　　D 14%

4 What did John Maynard Keynes' words mean in Paragraph C?

A London was a big city.

B Manufacture was the most important industry.

C People benefited from the global trade.

D Deliveryman was considered an honourable career.

5 What was the direct influence of the invention of the refrigerated cargo ship?

A It ended the dominance of British trade over the world.

B It became the fastest means of transport for goods at that time.

C It ensured that Latin America had its own share in the global market.

D Meat products surpassed crops and became the most important goods.

6 The following statements are the downsides of globalisation and industrialisation EXCEPT that

A most parts of Africa became colonies of European countries.

B some countries were excluded from the globalised competition.

C most labour workers maintained a terrible situation.

D Latin America and other countries enlarged the worldwide competition by exporting their own specialised products.

Speaking

1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择正确的节日名称填入对应图片下方的空白处。

Valentine's Day　　Halloween　　Mid-autumn Festival　　Christmas



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____

1.2 请将方框中的关键词填入表格对应的位置，并尝试描述这些国家。

Places: Hollywood, Great Wall, River Thames, Sydney Opera House, Eiffel Tower

Food: fish and chips, Coca Cola, macaroon, dumpling, dark beer

Mother tongues: Chinese, American English, British English, German, French, Australian English

China	England	America

Australia	Germany	France

2 能力培养

2.1 语法训练——主语从句

❶ 由that引导的主语从句

为了强调主语，通常将that引导的主语从句放在句首

- **That global prices will go up** is certain. 全球物价要上涨是肯定的。
- **That she became an artist** may have been due to her mother. 她成为艺术家可能要归功于她的母亲。

可以借助形式主语it将真正的主语从句放到句子后部

- It's strange **that he knows nothing about Chinese food**. 真奇怪，他对中国菜一无所知。
- It's a pity **that he never plays any electronic games**. 很遗憾，他从来不玩电子游戏。
- It's said **that there has been an earthquake in Australia**. 据说澳大利亚发生了地震。

❷ 由连接代词／连接副词引导的主语从句

由连接代词或连接副词引导的主语从句可以放在句首，也可以借助形式主语it将主语从句放在句子后部

- **How this ancient festival was celebrated** was a mystery. 如何庆祝这个古老的节日是一个谜。
- **Whether the gallery will display abstract paintings** remains to be seen. 美术馆是否会展出抽象画还要拭目以待。
- It's no business of yours **where I spend my holiday**. 我在哪里度假不关你的事。
- It's doubtful **whether the payment is legal in England**. 这笔付款在英国是否合法值得怀疑。
- It's like magic **how cultures blend in harmony**. 各种文化和谐交融的方式简直像是魔法。
- It's not yet settled **whether I am going to Germany**. 我还没有决定去不去德国。

❸ 由关系代词型what / whatever / whoever等引导的主语从句

- **What will be**, will be. 该发生的总会发生。
- **What I'm afraid of** is they are taking her to Italy. 我担心的是他们带她去意大利。
- **Whatever he did** was right. 他做的一切都是对的。
- **Whoever works in a foreign company** can speak some English. 在外企工作的人都会说些英语。

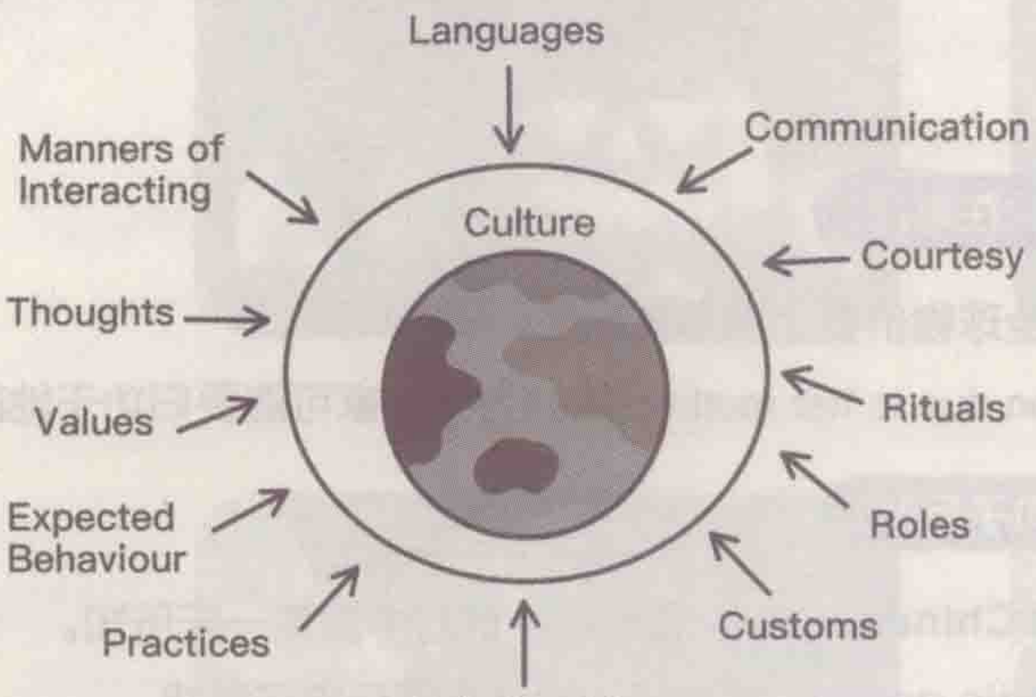
练习1 **请将下列句子翻译成英文。**

1 他成为钢琴演奏家可能是受了他母亲的影响。

2 在一些国家，女性仍然受到不平等对待，这是不公平的。

3 我们得不到的东西似乎比我们已经拥有的东西更好。

练习2 **请用已学的词汇和语法描述图片。**



Example

Many of us must have experienced culture shock when we travel abroad...

2.2 发音训练——音的同化和弱读

❶ 同化

同化指一个音在语流中受相邻的音的影响而变得与其相像，受同化影响的主要是辅音。同化现象可能会在交流中造成听力理解困难，所以要特别重视。

请听录音，跟读模仿以下例句，纠正自己的发音。

The young man has light blue eyes, dark hair, and even a little facial hair.
/laɪt plu:/
这个年轻人有一双淡蓝色的眼睛，深色头发，甚至有稀疏的面部毛发。

Believe it or not, English food can be quite good sometimes.
/kwaɪt kʊd/
不管你信不信，英国的食物有时候相当不错。

We need to clean the house before the Spring Festival to get rid of dirt and dust accumulated in the last year.
/ɪnnə/
我们要在春节前夕打扫房子，清除过去一年积累的污垢和灰尘。

Get them bikes and go to the park.
/getəm/
给他们准备自行车，然后去公园。

Read these stories about the festivals.

/ri:ddi:z/

读一读这些有关节日的故事吧。

❷ 弱读

虚词中的某些词，如冠词、介词、连词，以及某些情态动词在句中可以强读也可以弱读，但两种读法所表示的含义可能完全不同。在大部分情况下，此类词不强读，但表示强调时一般强读，比如与另一个词形成对比、被单独引用时。

请听录音，跟读模仿以下例句，纠正自己的发音。

例词	弱读	强读	例句
a	/ə/	/eɪ/	It was my first experience of being at a live concert. /ə/ 这是我第一次参加现场音乐会。
an	/ən/	/æn/	Some people have to share an office. /ən/ 有些人需要合用一间办公室。
for	/fə(r)/	/fɔ:(r)/	We went to a local restaurant for lunch. /fə(r)/ 我们去了一家当地餐馆吃午饭。
from	/frəm/	/frɒm/	‘Hongbao’ is a red packet containing lucky money from parents and seniors. /frəm/ “红包”是父母和长辈给的装着压岁钱的一个红色纸袋。
of	/əv/	/ɒv/	The Spring Festival is by far the most important celebration of the year in China. /əv/ 时至今日，春节在中国仍是一年中最重要的庆典。
to	/tə/	/tu:/	She’s married to an Italian. /tə/ 她嫁给了一个意大利人。
than	/ðən/	/ðæn/	There was more whisky in the glass than soda. /ðən/ 玻璃杯里的威士忌比苏打水多。
and	/ənd/ /ən/ /n/	/ænd/	The concert hall was filled with colourful lights and melodious sounds. /n/ 音乐厅里到处是五颜六色的灯光和动听的声音。
can	/kən/	/kæn/	Dragon Boat Festival is a national holiday, and families can get together and enjoy a good meal. /kən/ 端午节是一个全国性的节日，家人可以聚在一起享受大餐。

3 话题讲解

3.1 雅思口语Part 1——娱乐休闲类



你有什么业余爱好吗?

没课的时候我喜欢逛美术馆和博物馆。





真不错！那遇到休闲娱乐类的问题时，你就可以聊一聊你最喜欢去的场馆、感兴趣的展品类型和你在这些场馆中学到的知识等等。

是的。我最喜欢国家博物馆，还有各个地方博物馆。参观博物馆可以感受华夏五千年源远流长的历史文化。



考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

- What do you do for entertainment?
- Do you like visiting museums and art galleries? [Why / Why not?]
- What can you learn from visiting museums or art galleries?
- Do you think schools should take children to visit museums and art galleries? [Why / Why not?]

话题表达

learn about history 了解历史

exercise one's imagination 运用某人的想象力

ancient society 古代社会

form of entertainment 娱乐形式

visit art galleries 参观美术馆

historical exhibits from various dynasties 各个朝代的历史展品

a piece of art 一件艺术品

a delightful experience 一次愉快的经历

motivate one's creativity 激发某人的创新能力

I believe museums and art galleries can be fascinating since they... 我认为博物馆和美术馆是很吸引人的，因为它们……

Museums display... 博物馆展示……

It will be an educational experience because... 这将是一次富有教育意义的经历，因为……

In museums / art galleries, we can learn about... 在博物馆／美术馆里，我们可以了解……

Moreover, they would have the opportunity to... 此外，他们将有机会……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

I believe museums and art galleries can be fascinating since they have exhibits from ancient societies. For instance, museums that display bones of prehistoric humans are quite intriguing because they show what human beings were like a long time ago. Some galleries exhibit pieces of artworks from all over the world. It will be an educational experience for children to take such a visit. They can learn more about history and make full use of their imagination.

3.2 雅思口语Part 2——节日类

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

Describe a foreign festival you have experienced or heard of.

You should say:

what the festival is

how people usually celebrate on this occasion

what is special about this festival

and explain what you think about this festival.

思路解析与拓展



“节日”是雅思口语考试的常考话题，不仅会在Part 2出现，在Part 1也会出现。



关于这个话题，我们可以介绍春节、中秋节和端午节等传统的中国节日，也可以介绍西方的圣诞节、感恩节和万圣节等节日。



另外，也可以选择母亲节、泼水节等大家比较了解的节日。像草莓音乐节（Strawberry Music Festival）这种某个行业的特有节日也是可以讲的。



无论介绍哪一个节日，都可以从它的日期、起源、庆祝方式和为何钟爱这个节日等方面思考和准备。

话题表达

pray for good luck 祈求好运

family reunion 家庭团聚

evening gala 晚会

cherish the time 珍惜时光

tasty specialty 美味的特色菜

visit relatives 探亲

a new beginning 一个新的开始

symbolise energy and hope 象征着能量和希望

light fireworks 放烟花

sing at a bar 在酒吧唱歌

...is a famous festival in Western / Eastern countries. ……是西方／东方国家的一个著名节日。

Families get together... 家人聚在一起……

Of course, when we talk about...we cannot avoid mentioning... 当然，当我们谈论……时，我们一定会提到……

Talking about festivals, the most important one is no doubt... 说到节日，最重要的无疑是……

The most important moment would be... 最重要的时刻是……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

Christmas is a famous festival in most Western countries, and I believe it is also popular around the world. Nearly everyone has heard of it and its related customs.

Some families actually get together on Christmas Eve for celebration, while others wait for the Christmas Day to organise a big dinner or throw a party. I had a foreign teacher from England in the last semester. She told me that the traditions of Christmas could be different from one country to another, and also from one family to another. She said that in the UK, it is common for people to eat a roast turkey and Christmas pudding for dessert.

Of course, when we talk about Christmas, we cannot avoid mentioning the white-bearded man: Santa Claus. In Western culture, parents tell their children that if they behave well, Santa will bring them presents on Christmas Eve.

Christmas is about peace, love, and goodwill to all. People always put a Christmas tree in their house and decorate it with coloured lights and Christmas balls. At the top of the tree, there should be a golden star. I intend to study in England next year, and I truly hope I will get a chance to experience this festival with a British family.

4 课后练习

4.1 请参考示例，使用方框中的词汇描述你喜欢的节日。

balloon	cake	card	costume	family
friend	firework	holiday	local	national
occasion	present	show	traditional food	

The New Year is a very special occasion. Different cultures celebrate the event in different manners, but the first day of January is often marked as a national holiday. In some places there are various shows in the street, and people wear costumes in vivid colours. Some people also set off fireworks on the New Year's Eve.

4.2 请回答以下问题。

- Would you like to visit a foreign museum in the future?
- Have you recently been to any place for entertainment?
- Describe a festival in your culture.

  You should say:

  what the festival is

  who you celebrate the festival with

  what is special about this festival

  and explain how you feel about this festival.
- Describe a place you have visited where you enjoyed learning about another culture.

  You should say:

  where the place was

  when and why you visited there

  what you have learnt about the culture

  and explain why you enjoyed learning about that culture.

Writing

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据中文提示，拼写出下列单词。

1 传统　t_a_it_on　　2 全球的　g_o_ _l

3 遗产　h_ri_a_e　　4 慈善的　ch_r_t_b_ _

5 习俗　c_s_o_　　6 国际的　in_er_a_io_al

7 援助　a_d　　8 身份　i_e_t_ty

1.2 请使用1.1中单词的正确形式填空，完成句子。

1 Countries can enhance communication with one another through _____ organisations and conferences.

2 Traditional _____ and conventions may have a clash with globalisation.

3 _____ funds lift millions of people out of poverty.

4 Financial _____ may come with risks of money abuse.

5 More exchanges in people and governments could help create a _____ community.

2 能力培养

2.1 词汇表达

❶ 核心单词及其派生词

核心单词	派生词
nation /'neɪʃn/ *n.* 国家	national /'næʃnəl/ *adj.* 国家的
culture /'kʌltʃə(r)/ *n.* 文化	cultural /'kʌltʃərəl/ *adj.* 文化的
cooperate /kəʊ'ɒpəreɪt/ *v.* 合作	cooperation /kəʊˌɒpə'reɪʃn/ *n.* 合作
global /'gləʊbl/ *adj.* 全球的	globalisation /ˌgləʊbəlaɪ'zeɪʃn/ *n.* 全球化
tradition /trə'dɪʃn/ *n.* 传统	traditional /trə'dɪʃənl/ *adj.* 传统的
charity /'tʃærəti/ *n.* 慈善	charitable /'tʃærətəbl/ *adj.* 慈善的
import /'ɪmpɔːt/ *v.* 进口	importer /ɪm'pɔːtə(r)/ *n.* 进口商
history /'hɪstri/ *n.* 历史	historical /hɪ'stɒrɪkl/ *adj.* 历史的
donate /dəʊ'neɪt/ *v.* 捐赠	donation /dəʊ'neɪʃn/ *n.* 捐赠
distribute /dɪ'strɪbjuːt/ *v.* 分配	distribution /ˌdɪstrɪ'bjuːʃn/ *n.* 分配

❷ 常用短语

imported food 进口食品

domestic market 国内市场

international cuisine 世界美食

international cooperation 国际合作

multi-cultural society 多元文化社会

exotic culture 异国文化

cultural exchange 文化交流

cultural diffusion 文化传播

cultural barrier 文化障碍

cultural relic 文化遗产

cultural identity 文化身份

historical figure 历史人物

historical legacy 历史遗产

traditional element 传统元素

famous international brand 国际知名品牌

fast-food chain 快餐连锁店

eliminate national barriers 消除国家壁垒

global community 全球社区

reserve traditions and customs 保留传统和习俗

stay within cultural norms 遵守文化规范

follow the local tradition 遵循当地的传统

preserve cultural heritage 保护文化遗产

charity organisation 慈善组织

charitable activity 慈善活动

promote social progress 促进社会进步

enhance communication 加强沟通

disparity among the rich and the poor 贫富差距

❸ 句型及例句

be helpful in... 在……方面有帮助

- Encouraging visitors to follow the local traditions could **be helpful in** preserving our heritage.
  鼓励游客遵循当地的传统有助于保护我们的遗产。

promote the cultural communication between...and... / among... 促进……之间的文化交流

- International tourism and cross-border trade can greatly **promote the cultural communication among** different countries. 国际旅游和跨境贸易可以促进不同国家之间的文化交流。

...be an obstacle to... ……是……的障碍

- Failing to grasp the language **is an obstacle to** experiencing the local culture.
  不能掌握当地语言会对体验当地文化造成障碍。

give rise to conflicts between...and... 引发……之间的冲突

- International tourism may **give rise to conflicts between** tourists **and** local residents because tourists have little knowledge about local culture.
  国际旅游也许会引起游客和当地居民间的冲突，因为游客对当地文化了解不多。

练习 **请从方框中选择适合的短语填空，完成句子。**

historical figures	international cuisine	famous international brands
cultural identity	cultural norms	fast-food chains

1 The import and export of foodstuffs have enabled people all over the world to taste a wide variety of _____.

2 The dominance of _____ such as McDonald's and KFC has, to some extent, eliminated national barriers and helped create a global community.

3 The similarity between different nations means the loss of _____.

4 Traditional clothes are challenged by the designs from the _____.

5 Readers will also learn about _____ who have spread Chinese food around the world.

6 When visiting other countries, we should stay within local _____ to show our respect.

2.2 语法重点

主谓一致

"分数 / 百分数 + of + 名词"作主语时，谓语动词的单复数与of后名词的单复数保持一致

- More than 20 per cent of students **are** from other countries at our college.
  我们学院超过20%的学生来自其他国家。
- Three-tenths of our business **needs** to be done with foreign customers.
  我们十分之三的业务需要与外国客户打交道。

"more than one / many a + 单数名词"作主语时，虽然表示复数概念，但谓语动词用单数形式

- More than one country at the conference **is** against the proposal. 大会上多个国家反对这项提案。
- Many an international game **was** held in this city. 许多国际比赛在这个城市举行。

many，a great many of，a few等修饰可数名词复数作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式

- Many measures **are** taken by the local government to preserve traditional culture.
  当地政府采取了许多措施来保护传统文化。

much，a great deal of，a little，a bit of等修饰不可数名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式

- Much knowledge of foreign cultures **is** misleading and biased.
  许多关于外国文化的知识具有误导性且存在偏见。

plenty of，a large quantity of，a mass of，enough等修饰名词作主语时，谓语的单复数与所修饰名词的单复数保持一致

- A large quantity of money **is** donated to relieve the effects of the huge earthquake.
  大量捐款用以减轻大地震造成的影响。
- A mass of international tourists **flood** into this tour city during holidays.
  假日期间，大批国际游客涌入这个旅游城市。

形式上是复数的专有名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式

- The United Nations **is** an international organisation. 联合国是一个国际组织。

以-ics结尾的学科名词作主语时，谓语动词通常用单数形式

- International politics **discusses** the influence of the rise of a country on the world.
  国际政治讨论一个国家的崛起对世界的影响。

主语从句作句子主语时，要根据主语从句所指代的概念决定谓语的单复数形式

- What international cooperation needs **is** mutual understanding. 国际合作需要的是相互理解。（what引导的主语从句表示单数意义）
- Whether financial aids are used efficiently **is** debated openly at the conference. 会上公开讨论了财政援助是否得到了有效利用。（whether引导的主语从句表示单数意义）
- What we do and think **constitute** our culture. 我们所做的和所想的构成了我们的文化。（what引导的主语从句表示复数意义）

定语从句中谓语动词的单复数与从句所修饰的先行词的单复数保持一致

- Imported food generally contains more packaging that **imposes** enormous demands on the environment.
  进口食品通常经过更多包装，这对环境提出巨大需求。
- The teenagers who **are** curious about exotic cultures will be interested in trying new things.
  对异国文化感到好奇的青少年会对尝试新事物很感兴趣。

练习 **请使用括号中单词的正确形式填空，完成句子。**

1 Ninety per cent of world wealth _____ (be) held in the hands of the rich.

2 Whether the government should help other countries _____ (be) heatedly debated in the morning.

3 Plenty of fruits and vegetables _____ (be) imported from other countries every year.

4 *The New York Times* _____ (have) great influence around the world.

5 What attracts those visitors _____ (be) the beautiful scenery in this city.

6 The aesthetic qualities of traditional buildings that _____ (make) some places unique may gradually give way to modern commerce and industry.

2.3 衔接方式

❶ including

表示“包括……”，后面加名词或名词短语。一般用在句子末尾引出人或事物，作为例子解释前面所述内容。

- Because of the increasing international tourists, local business is booming, **including** clubs, bars, and souvenir shops.
  由于国际游客越来越多，当地商业正在蓬勃发展，包括俱乐部、酒吧和纪念品商店。

❷ clearly

表示“明显地，无疑地”，可以用于修饰谓语动词、形容词或整个句子。用在句中修饰谓语动词或形容词时，不需要用逗号隔开；用在句首修饰整个句子时，一般要用逗号隔开。

- **Clearly**, advanced communication technology promotes the rapid development of globalisation.
  显然，先进的通信技术促进了全球化的快速发展。
- It is **clearly** important to emphasise equal trade between countries in the course of globalisation.
  在全球化进程中，强调国家间的平等贸易无疑是重要的。

❸ alternatively

表示“或者，另外”，通常用在句子开头，其后用逗号隔开，修饰整个句子。

- International financial aids could relieve some countries in need of the poverty. **Alternatively**, goods assistance could also alleviate the hunger of the citizens in these countries. 国际财政援助可以减轻一些需要援助国家的贫困状况。另外，商品援助也可以减轻这些国家人民的饥饿情况。

❹ simultaneously

表示“同时地”，可以用于修饰动词或整个句子，意思上相当于at the same time，但表达更正式。

- Under the background of globalisation, it is important to absorb international culture. **Simultaneously**, conserving traditional culture should be given equal importance.
  在全球化背景下，吸收国际文化显得尤为重要。同时，保护传统文化也应该受到同样的重视。

❺ what is more

用于补充信息，表示递进的逻辑关系，意为“进一步说”“更重要的是……”。通常用于句首，其后用逗号隔开。

- Globalisation brings many benefits and opportunities for economic development. **What is more**, it also promotes exchanges of international cultures.
  全球化给经济发展带来了许多好处和机遇。更重要的是，它还促进了国际文化的交流。

❻ to give an illustration of this

在这一不定式短语中，中心词illustration是example的同义词，表示“举个例子”，相当于for example / instance，但表达更正式，用在句子开头，引出例证。

- Globalisation brings great challenges to the local food industry. **To give an illustration of this**, fast-food outlets like KFC and McDonald’s, almost spread throughout every country in the world. 全球化给当地的食品业带来了巨大的挑战。举例来说，像肯德基、麦当劳这样的快餐店几乎遍布世界上的各个国家。

练习 **请使用前面学过的衔接词或短语填空，完成句子。**

1 International media is reshaping traditional elements in many aspects, _____ food, clothing, lifestyles, sports, and arts.

2 _____, international tourism brings jobs, investment, and economic benefits to destinations.

3 Foreign food and exotic festivals are attractive to the young. _____, buildings and clothing are also greatly influenced.

4 In many countries and regions, tourism-focused infrastructures are rebuilt to reach global standards. _____, the railway stations and airports are constructed, following the international norms.

5 International organisations are set up to deal with global issues. _____, they play an important role

in improving global communication.

6 International travelling enables us to see the exotic scenery. _____, we can also have a better understanding of local cultures.

3 题型讲解

3.1 全球化类话题

雅思写作大作文的主体段通常包含以下几个部分：

idea	观点
explanation	解释观点
further explanation / example	进一步解释或举例
detail / result of the example	细节或举例的结果
additional information	补充信息
transition	转折
comparison	对比
conclusion	结论

Tips

在雅思写作大作文的主体段中，“观点”“解释观点”“结论”是必备项。同时，主体段也可能包括“进一步解释或举例”“细节或举例的结果”“补充信息”“转折”“对比”等内容，但不是必备项，且出现顺序可以根据实际情况灵活调整。

请以下面的题目为例，学习大作文主体段的写作。

Many young people today know more about international pop and movie stars than famous people in the history of their countries. Why is this? What can be done to increase young people's interest in famous people in the history of their countries?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.



❶ 题型分析

该题目为“原因 + 措施”类题型，中心话题为：年轻人关注外国文化而忽略本国文化的现象。写作时要分析这一现象产生的原因，并提出能够使年轻人关注国内历史文化名人的措施。

❷ 段落组织

主体段1 原因

idea	The rise of mass media makes celebrities frequently appear in our sight and thus boosts the **worship** for them.
explanation	Their life attracts such widespread interest, of the young, particularly.
further explanation	They present the audience with an ideal image of human existence with **wealth and colourful life**.
additional information	These are the **aspiration** of many people.
conclusion	The young people, therefore, see them as examples and seek to copy their life as much as possible.

观点	大众传媒的兴起使得名人频频出现在我们的视野中，从而引发了我们对他们的崇拜。
解释观点	他们的生活引起了广泛的关注，尤其是来自年轻人的关注。
进一步解释	他们享受着富裕且丰富多彩的生活，向观众展示了一个理想的生活画面。
补充信息	这是很多人的愿望。
结论	因此，年轻人视他们为榜样，并尽可能多地模仿他们的生活。

主体段2 措施

idea	As for the measures to change the interest of the young, activities should be organised to improve their understanding of **historical figures**.
explanation	They will help young people establish **proper values of the world**.
example	Schools can provide opportunities for students to visit historical museums, where they can learn more about historical figures' personalities, spirits and **contributions to** the world.
result of the example	They can follow the historical figures' examples, develop good living habits and appreciate the **value of perseverance**.
conclusion	In order to ensure that young people are interested in historical figures, it is necessary to encourage them to learn the **fine qualities of historical figures** which are in line with current reality.

观点	关于转变年轻人兴趣的措施，人们应该组织活动来加深他们对历史人物的认识。
解释观点	他们将帮助年轻人树立正确的价值观。

举例	学校可以为学生们提供参观历史博物馆的机会。在博物馆里，学生们能够了解更多历史人物的性格、精神以及他们为世界作出的贡献。
举例的结果	他们可以效仿历史人物，培养良好的生活习惯，体会坚持不懈的价值。
结论	为了确保年轻人对历史人物感兴趣，有必要鼓励他们学习历史人物所具备的当今现实需要的优秀品质。

练习 **请根据题目，判断所给范文的两个主体段中句子的作用。**

In some countries, people believe that international tourism is a bad thing for their country. What are the reasons for this? How can we change their views?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

主体段1 原因

Some argue that international tourism fuels the conflicts between local residents and tourists rather than improves the understanding of different cultures.	1 _____
Because of the flooding of tourists, the inhabitants have to suffer the crowded roads and increasing waste.	2 _____
Many unique buildings and beautiful places are replaced by tourism-focused business, such as clubs, bars, and souvenir shops.	3 _____
Unmanageable tourist behaviour increases the pressure of maintaining local security and social stability.	4 _____
All these negative effects lead to the deep hatred of the local people for international tourists.	5 _____

主体段2 措施

In order to tackle these conflicts, local governments should take measures from two aspects.	6 _____
On the one hand, governments should encourage tourists to be responsible and follow the local customs.	7 _____
Thus, they can fully experience the local culture.	8 _____
On the other hand, governments should persuade local residents to be more tolerant towards tourists since they have little knowledge of local conventions.	9 _____
Only with the mutual understanding and respect can international tourism bring mutual benefits.	10 _____

3.2 柱状图2

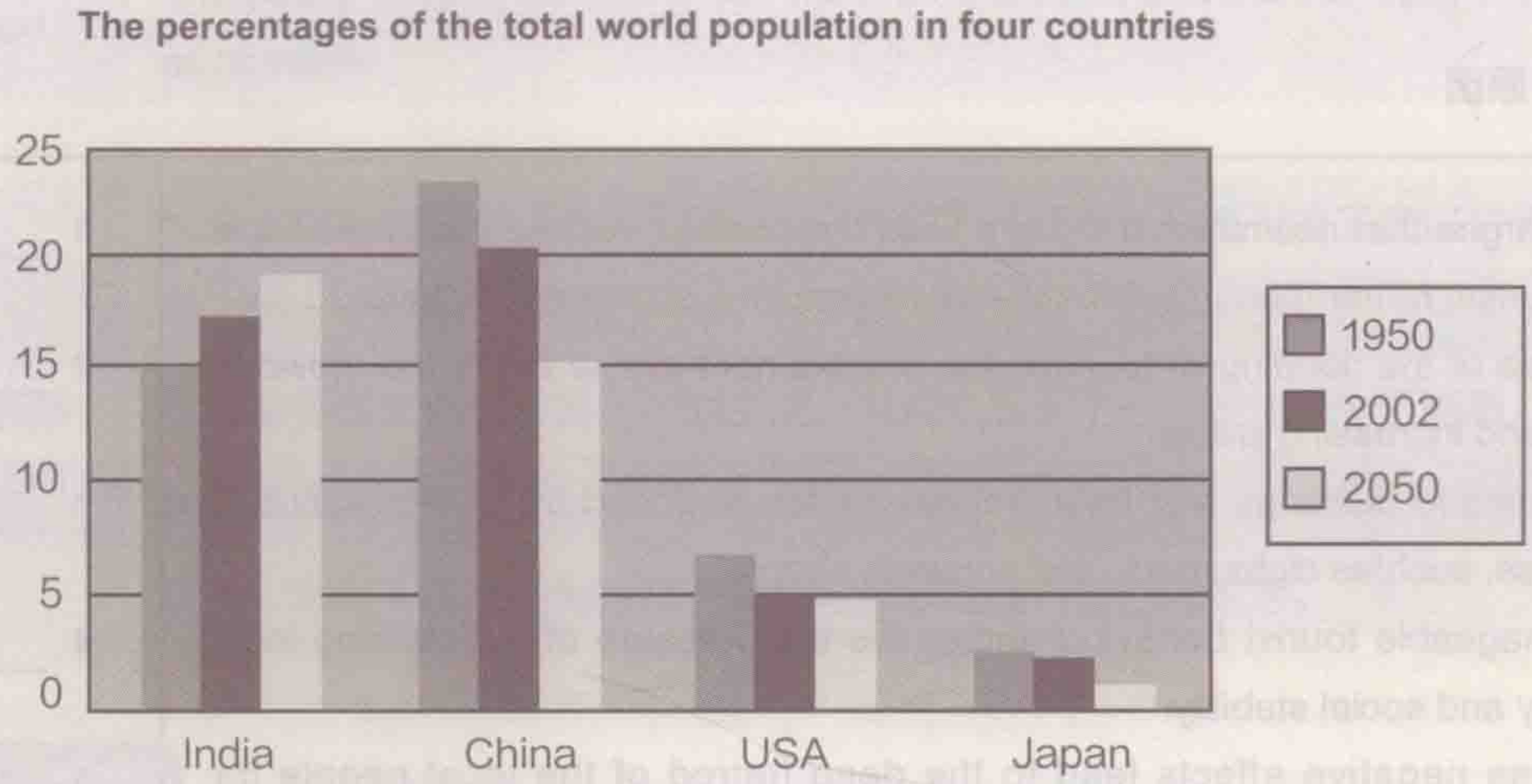
完成柱状图题时需要注意：

- 组织段落时，可有多种分段方式。既可以根据柱状图中的项目信息（如国家、时间等）分段，也可以根据柱状图数据呈现的特点（如变化趋势、数值大小等）分段。
- 多使用表示对比和比较的表达（如比较级和最高级、倍数等），突出数据的相似性和不同点。

请以下面的题目为例，学习柱状图主体段的写作。

The bar chart shows the percentage of the total world population in four countries in 1950 and 2002, and projections for 2050.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.



❶ 段落组织

段落	国家	变化趋势相似性	数据相似性	时间点
主体段1	发展中国家 India China	递增 India	人口较多 India China	过去 1950年 2002年
主体段2	发达国家 USA Japan	递减 China USA Japan	人口较少 USA Japan	未来 2050年

❷ 范文示例

开头段

The bar chart shows the proportion of the global population in four countries, India, China, the USA, and Japan in 1950 and 2002, and also a prediction for 2050. Overall, the populations of China and India

apparently account for larger percentages than those of the USA and Japan.

柱状图显示了1950年和2002年印度、中国、美国和日本四个国家的人口占全球人口的比例，以及对于2050年的预测。总的来说，中国和印度的人口比例明显高于美国和日本。

主体段1 过去

In 1950, China **accounted for the largest percentage of** the world population, at around 23%. Following China, India **stood at** exactly 15%. By contrast, the USA and Japan had less than 10% of the total population. In 2002, **there was a slight increase in** the percentage of India to about 17%. Meanwhile, China, the USA, and Japan **saw a decline**.

1950年，中国人口占世界人口的比例最高，约为23%。印度紧随中国之后，达到了15%。相比之下，美国和日本占世界人口的比例低于10%。2002年，印度人口所占比例略有增长，达到17%左右。与此同时，中国、美国和日本的人口占比出现了下降。

主体段2 未来

In 2050, the percentage of Indian population **is predicted to increase** to nearly 20% and **become the highest figure** among these four. By contrast, the rates of population in both China and Japan **are expected to decrease**, by exactly 5% and about 1% respectively. At the same time, the data for the USA is likely to **remain stable at** 5%.

2050年，印度人口的比例预计将增加至将近20%，成为这四个国家中最高的。相比之下，中国和日本的人口比例预计将分别下降5%和约1%。与此同时，美国的数据可能会稳定保持在5%。

练习 **请根据以上题目，从方框中选择适合的句子成分填空，完成以下主体段。**

saw downward trends	saw an increase	remain unchanged
is expected to decline	the highest number	in contrast

主体段1 递增

The percentage of the population in India 1 _____ from 15% in 1950 to 17% in 2002. The trend is predicted to continue, reaching nearly 20%, 2 _____ in 2050.

主体段2 递减

Over the period, the other three countries, China, the USA, and Japan, 3 _____ in the percentage of the world population. China decreased from the highest figure in 1950, around 23%, to 20% in 2002. The rate 4 _____ by another 5% by 2050. 5 _____, both the USA and Japan take up smaller percentages of the whole population. The number of the USA is possible to 6 _____ from 2002 to 2050, whereas Japan is likely to decrease by 1% further.

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据中文提示，重新排列所给句子组成部分，完成句子。

1 建立这一新结构的目的是对全球化进行管理。

would be / new structure / globalisation / the aim of this / the management of

_____

2 应该向贫穷国家派遣专业队伍，以便培养未来的人才。

educating / professional teams / to poor countries / with the purpose of / future talents / should be sent

_____

3 在全球化背景下，各国政府往往需要共同努力才能找到许多问题的有效解决办法。

governments / under globalisation / to seek effective solutions / take joint efforts / to many problems / often need to

_____

4 在经济繁荣时期，各国有能力更慷慨地对待那些收入最少的国家。

the least / during times of / can afford / to be more charitable / economic boom / who have / nations / to those countries

_____

5 慈善事业是社会发展的重要组成部分，使数百万人摆脱贫困。

charitable works / an essential part / are / millions of people / elevating / out of poverty / of social development

_____

6 中国的传统文化以其丰富多彩的形式和独特的风俗习惯吸引着世界各地的游客，从而促进了旅游业的发展。

traditional Chinese culture / of tourism / global visitors / attracts / and thus / and unique customs / boosts the development / with colourful forms

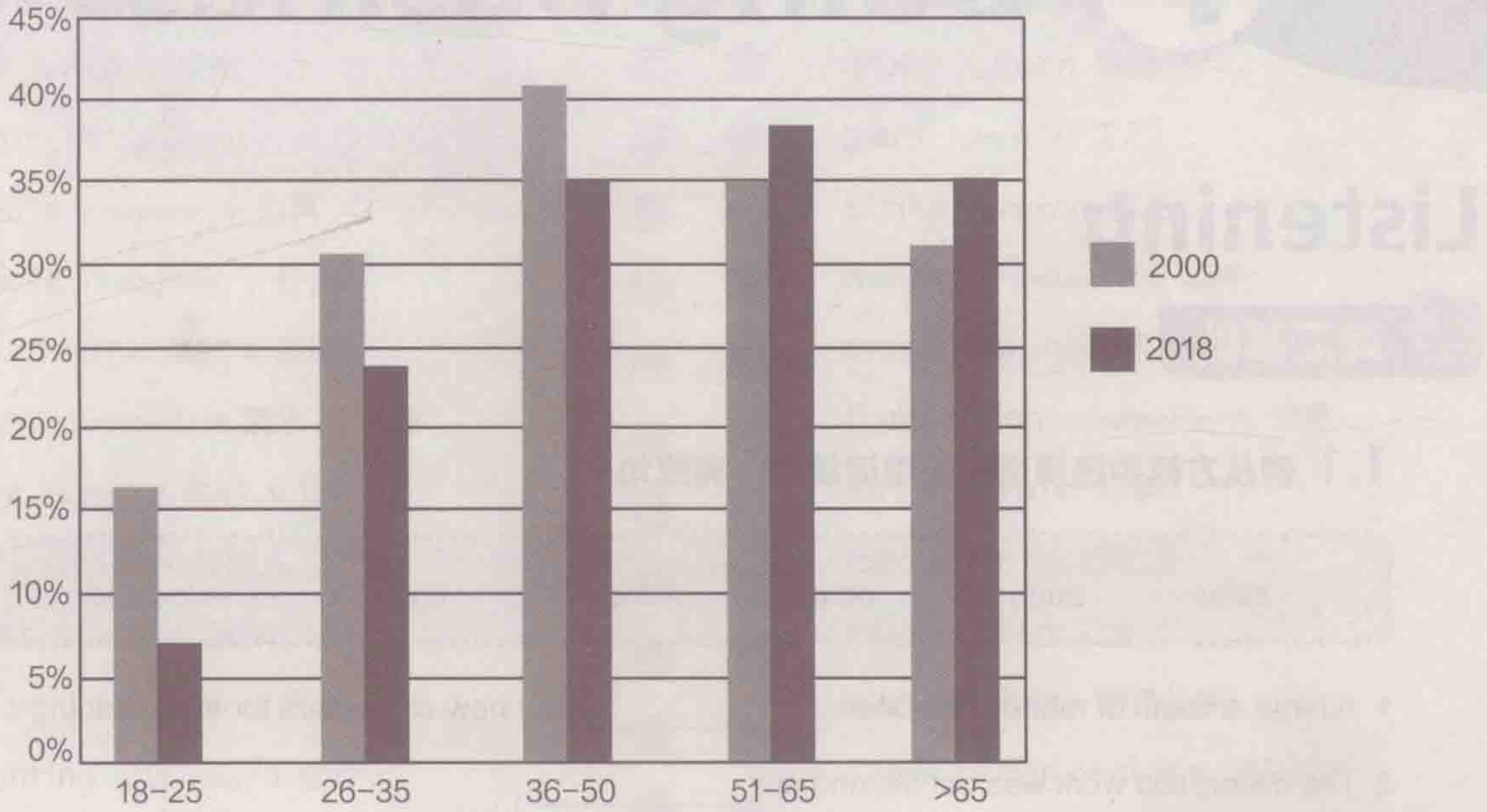
_____

4.2 请根据题目，从方框中选择适合的句子成分填空，完成下列范文的主体段。

The chart below gives information on the percentages of British people giving money to charity by age range for the years 2000 and 2018.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

The percentages of British people giving money to charity by age range for 2000 and 2018



by contrast	the highest percentage	a downward trend
saw an increase	slightly lower	remained at the lowest position
respectively	declined	

开头段

The bar chart shows data on the proportions of Britons donating money to charity by five different age groups in 2000 and 2018. Overall, the largest age group of donors shifted from the age group of 36–50 in 2000 to 51–65 in 2018.

主体段1 时间（2000年）

In 2000, about 41% of the 36–50 age group made charitable donations, which was 1 _____. The rates for the age groups of 51–65, over 65 and 26–35 were 2 _____, at around 35%, 31% and just over 30% respectively. 3 _____, the lowest figure went to the 18–25 group, at roughly 17%.

主体段2 时间（2018年）

In 2018, the age groups of 51–65 and over 65 4 _____ in the percentage of donors, while the other age groups 5 _____. More specifically, the figures for the age groups of 51–65 and over 65 increased by nearly 4% and 4% 6 _____. In comparison, the percentage of donors between 36 and 50 experienced 7 _____ from about 41% to exactly 35%, and the data for those between 26 and 35 went down by almost 7% to some 24%. The rate for the 18–25 age group 8 _____, at around 7% in 2018.

Unit 7 Doing Business

Listening

1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择适合的单词填空，完成句子。

strike	budget	demand	stocks	contract	allocated

1 A large amount of money has been _____ to buy new computers for the school.

2 The decoration work was not beyond our _____.

3 _____ is exceeding supply.

4 Tom made a _____ of employment with Silver Tech.

5 Shopping malls have been closed because of a _____ initiated by workers.

6 My father has benefited from buying the _____ of his company.

1.2 请把以下短语翻译成中文，可与学习伙伴讨论你对这些短语的理解。

1 interest rate _____

2 labour force _____

3 labour union _____

4 market share _____

5 user experience _____

6 public relations _____

1.3 请把意思相近的表达进行匹配。

1 fraud	A a small shop
2 flaw	B deal
3 stall	C worktop
4 counter	D cheat
5 customer	E weakness
6 transaction	F buyer

场景词汇

allocate /'æləkeɪt/ *v.* 分配
invest /ɪn'vest/ *v.* 投资
investment /ɪn'vestmənt/ *n.* 投资
estimate /'estɪmeɪt/ *v.* 估算
calculate /'kælkjuleɪt/ *v.* 计算
fluctuate /'flʌktʃueɪt/ *v.* 波动
demand /dɪ'mɑ:nd/ *n.* 需求 *v.* 需要
supply /sə'plaɪ/ *n.* 供给 *v.* 提供
agent /'eɪdʒənt/ *n.* 经纪人
budget /'bʌdʒɪt/ *n.* 预算
campaign /kæm'peɪn/ *n.* 活动
accounting /ə'kaʊntɪŋ/ *n.* 会计
capital /'kæpɪtl/ *n.* 资本
profit /'prɒfɪt/ *n.* 利润
profitable /'prɒfɪtəbl/ *adj.* 有利润的
contract /'kɒntrækt/ *n.* 合同
finance /'faɪnæns/ *n.* 金融
group /gru:p/ *n.* 集团
plant /plɑ:nt/ *n.* 工厂
strike /straɪk/ *n.* 罢工
welfare /'welfeə(r)/ *n.* 福利
stock /stɒk/ *n.* 股票
transaction /træn'zækʃn/ *n.* 交易
interest rate 利率
labour force 劳动力
labour union 工会
market share 市场份额
organisation analysis 组织分析
public relations 公共关系
sales campaign 促销活动
user experience 用户体验

2 能力培养

2.1 了解地图题

地图题一般出现在雅思听力考试的Part 2中，考查内容一般为公园、校园以及街区的建筑物方位等信息。地图上有时包含起点与坐标，考生一定要提前做好标记。地图题一般有两种出题形式：填空题和选择题。填空题型的地图题主要考查考生的拼写能力；选择题型的地图题又分为选项数量多于空格数量的和选项数量与空格数量一致的，选项数量多于空格数量的地图题主要考查考生的理解能力与速记能力，干扰项较多，难度较大。

2.2 解题步骤

❶ 读题目要求，判断题目是填空题型的地图题还是选择题型的地图题。
❷ 标注地图上的已知信息，尤其注意地图的方位。若已给出指南针，则要注意各个方向的位置；若未给出指南针，则可以自行标注方向。
❸ 听录音，注意记录起始点，一般是说话者所在的位置或者大门、入口等地方。注意说话者是对照固定位置描述其他建筑物的位置，还是边移动边介绍建筑物的位置。

4 做笔记要迅速，因为说话者可能一口气介绍了好几个建筑物的位置。记录方向的时候可适当使用符号标记。

5 听完录音后，对照笔记检查答案，填空题要注意检查拼写和单复数。

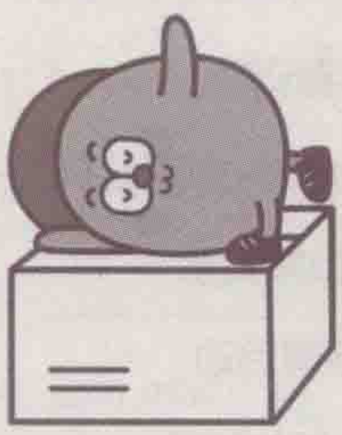
Tips

要特别注意听清楚方位词，如：east，west，north，south，southeast，northeast，southwest，northwest，in the front of，across，along，in the corner of，next to，near，beside，opposite to等。

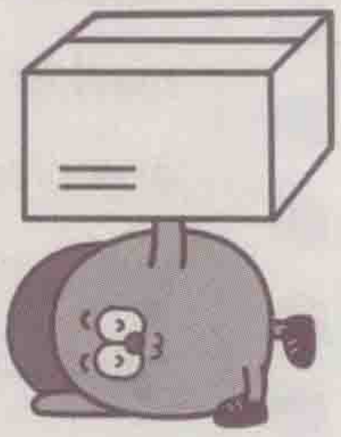
2.3 巩固练习

练习1 请从方框中选择适合的表达方位的单词或短语填写到对应的图片下方。

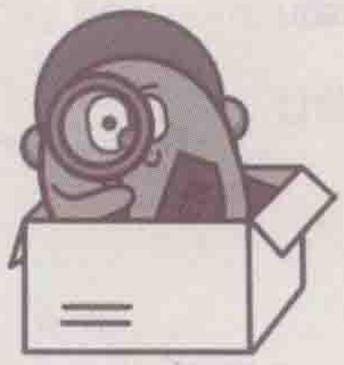
next to	in	in front of	opposite to
over	on	across	under



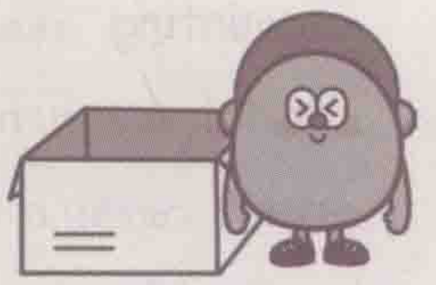
1 _____



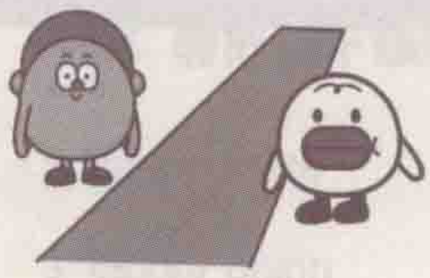
2 _____



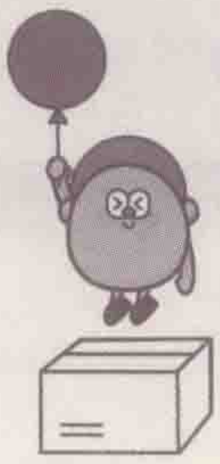
3 _____



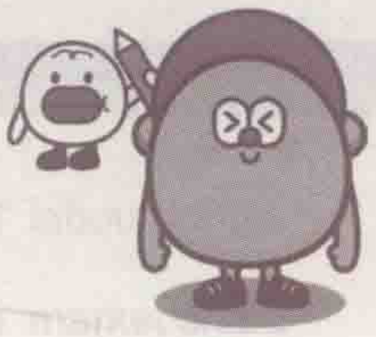
4 _____



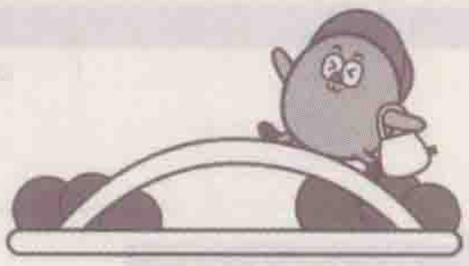
5 _____



6 _____



7 _____

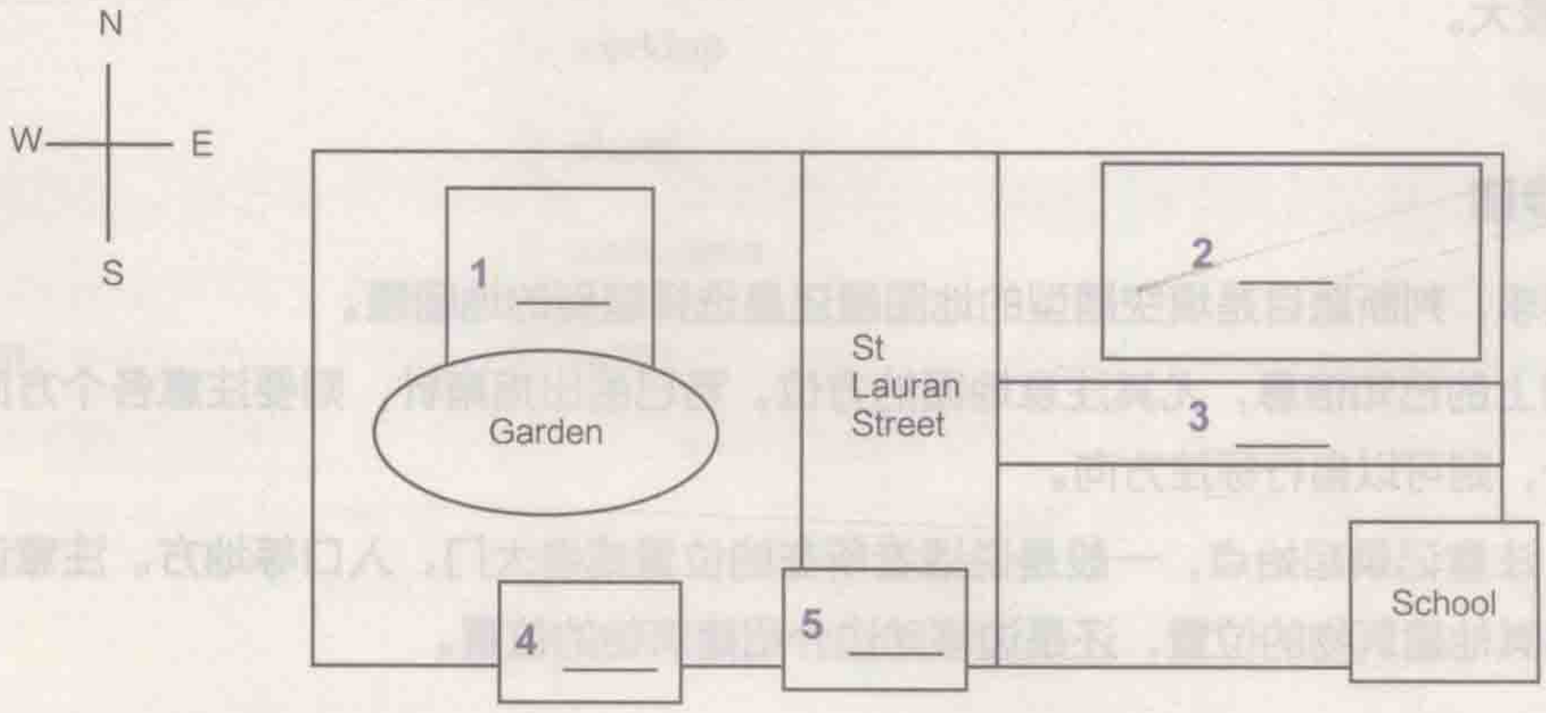


8 _____

练习2 请看题目，判断该地图题的题型。

Label the map below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.*

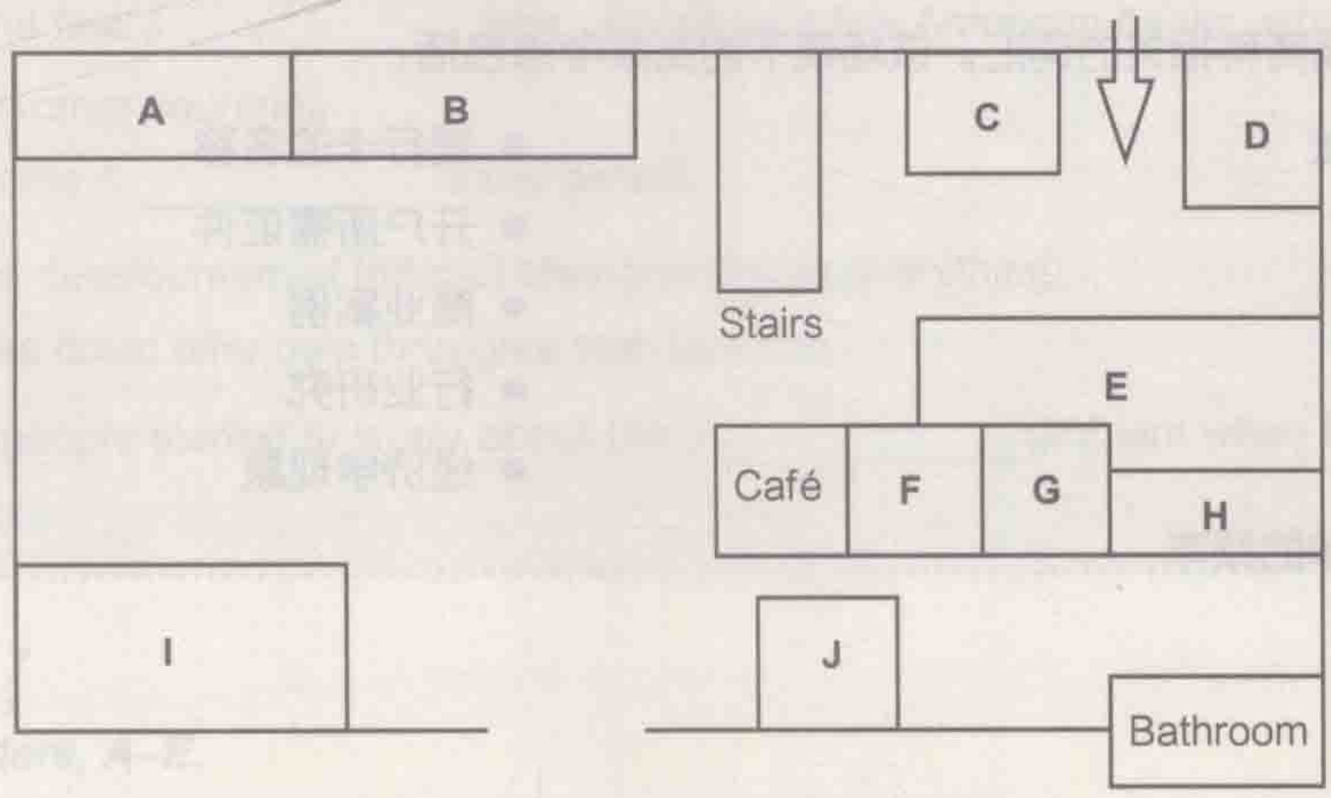


练习3 **请看题目，判断该地图题的题型，可用英语与学习伙伴讨论地图上的已知信息。**

Label the map below.

*Write the correct letter, **A–J**, next to Questions 1–5.*

The layout of the new offices



1 Staff entrance _____

2 Security room _____

3 Manager's office _____

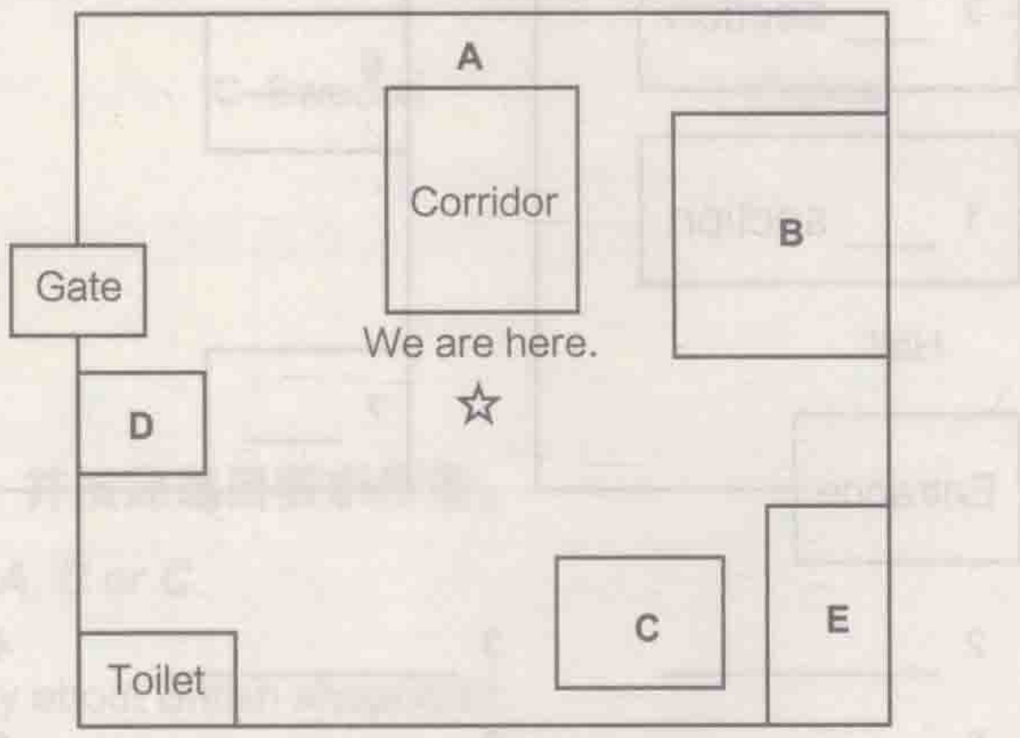
4 Working area _____

5 HR department _____

练习4 **请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。**

Label the map below.

*Write the correct letter, **A–E**, next to Questions 1–5.*



1 Information desk _____

2 Early history exhibition _____

3 Stock office _____

4 Show room _____

5 Store _____

3 题型讲解

3.1 高频场景

商务场景是雅思听力考试中比较常见的场景，该场景通常会在Part 1中出现，主要与银行业务有关。这一场景也可能在Part 3或Part 4中出现，多是学生和老师讨论商业案例的形式。这种形式的题目难度较高，需要考生掌握商科相关的词汇。该场景下的高频考点包括：

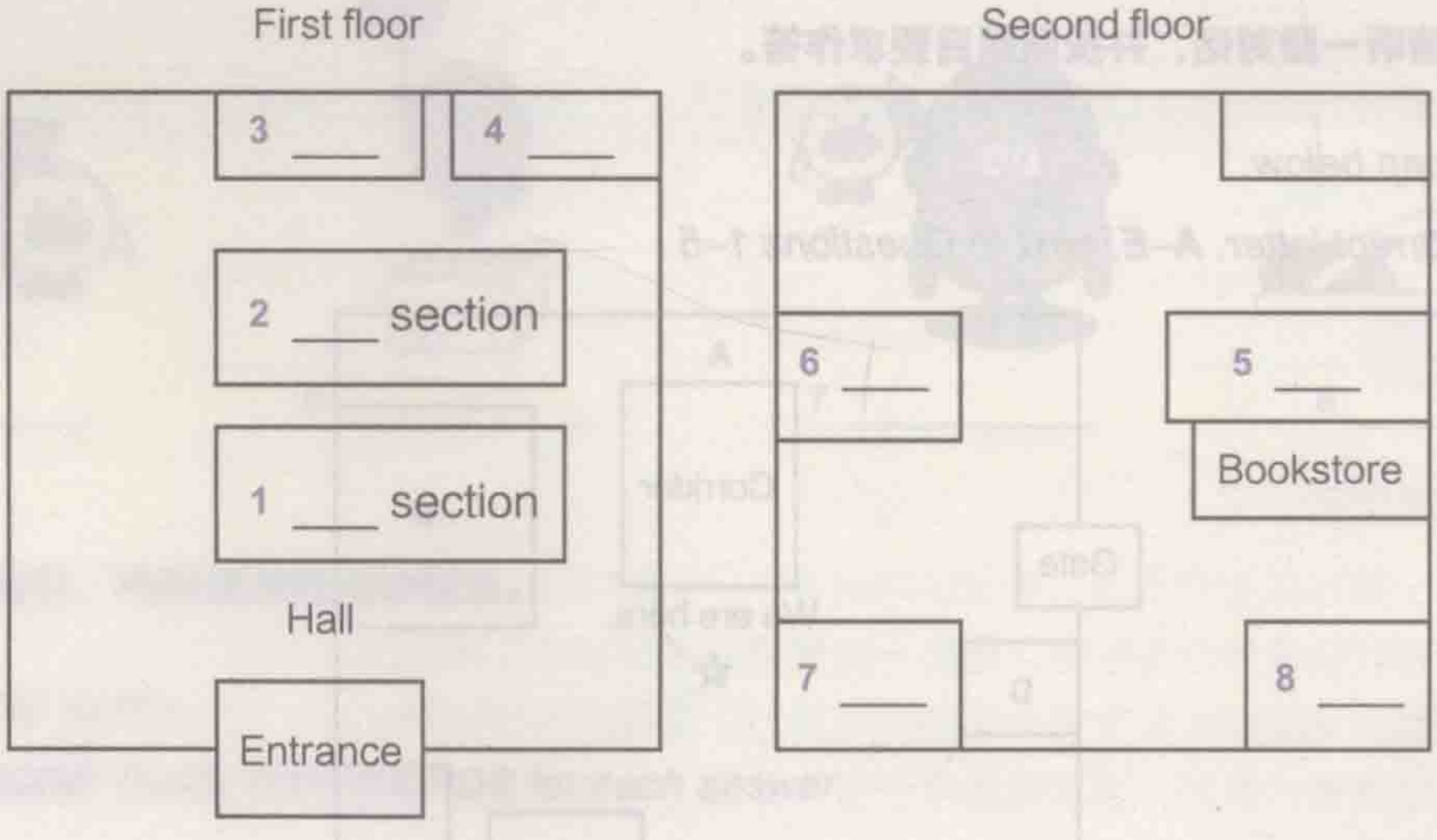
- 银行名称及地址
- 账户类型
- 开户金额
- 存款时间
- 利率或利息
- 接收银行对账单的频率
- 银行卡的名称
- 开户所需证件
- 商业案例
- 行业研究
- 经济学现象

3.2 题型演练

练习1 **请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。**

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.*

New Age Shopping Mall



1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____

5 _____ 6 _____ 7 _____ 8 _____

练习2 **请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。**

Questions 1–5

Complete the notes below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.*

Internet banking

- 1980s: The origins of online banking

  People who worked in 1 _____ could easily access the banking system.

  But if you wanted to transfer money, you still needed to post 2 _____.

- In 1981, the first 3 _____ was offered by a few American banks, which were followed by banks from other countries.

  But only some 4 _____ could benefit.

- 1990s: The development of Internet changed almost everything.

  Many banks could offer help through a web browser.

  However, people started to worry about the 5 _____ problem when making deals on the Internet.

Questions 6 and 7

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A**–**E**.*

Which **TWO** things made people change their view on financial transactions on the Internet?

A advanced technology
B bank websites' new features
C easy payment system
D new kinds of shops
E influence of media

Questions 8–10

*Choose **THREE** letters, **A**–**E**.*

Which **THREE** countries welcomed the new way of doing business with banks?

A UK
B US
C Sweden
D France
E Finland

4 课后练习

4.1 请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 What do the speakers say about British shoppers?

A They often argue with salesmen about the prices.
B They seldom bargain in shops.
C They seldom pay full price.

2 When does Amanda always bargain?

A when using a credit card
B when buying a lot at once
C when buying from a fancy store

3 What should NOT people do when bargaining?

A ask with good manner
B appear confident
C pretend to be angry

4 What is advised to do by Amanda?

A praise after expressing dissatisfaction

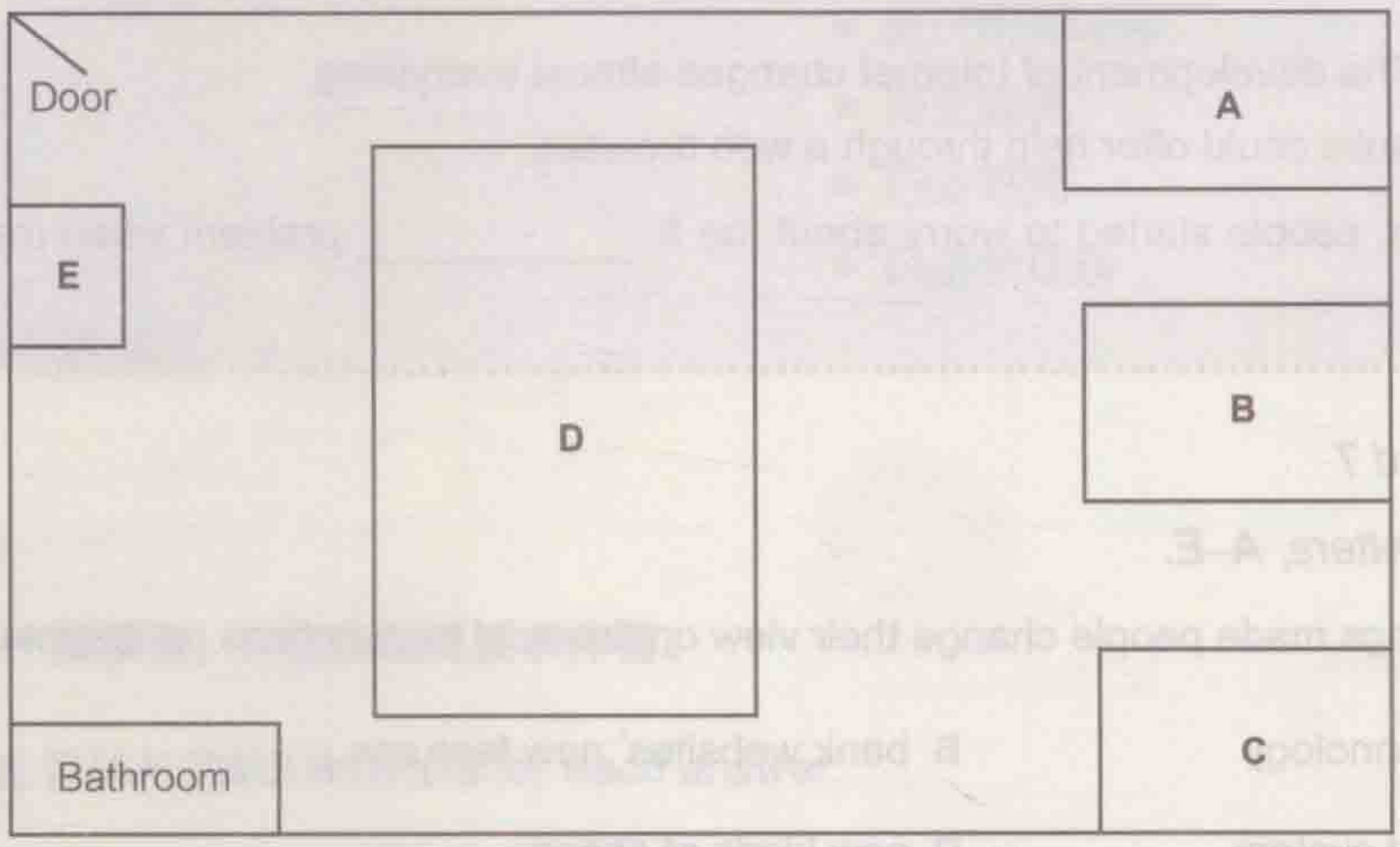
B buy in full price if the bargain fails

C leave if the bargain fails

4.2 请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。

Label the map below.

*Write the correct letter, **A–E**, next to Questions 1–5.*



1 Information desk _____

2 Counters _____

3 Consulting office _____

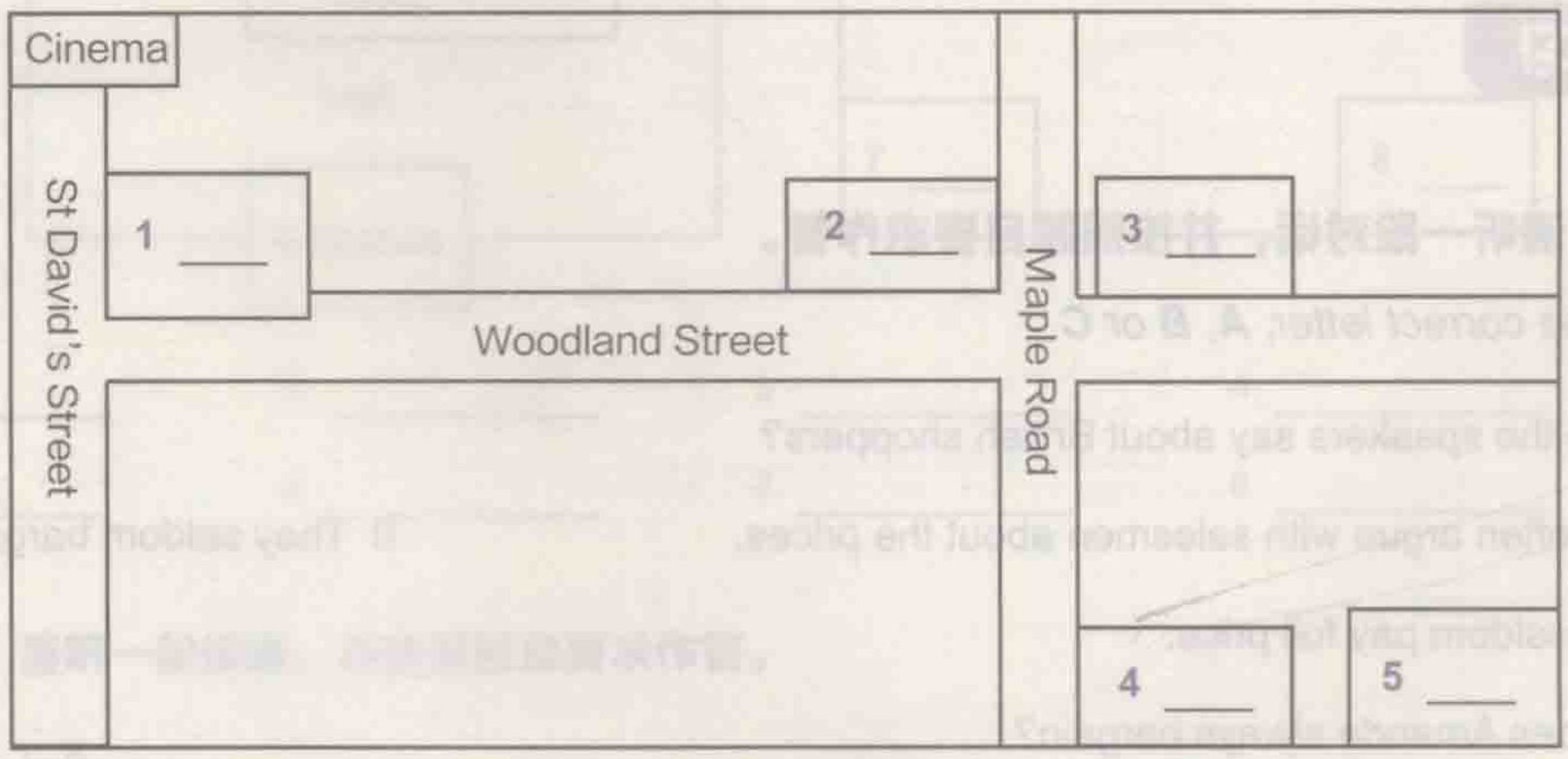
4 Manager's office _____

5 Staff office _____

4.3 请听一段对话，并按照题目要求作答。

Label the map below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.*



1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____ 5 _____

Reading

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将下列单词与其释义相匹配。

1 capital — A the money that you make in business or by selling things, especially after paying the costs involved

2 stock — B a large amount of money that is invested or is used to start a business

3 profit — C the money that you spend on something

4 budget — D the money that is available to a person or an organisation and there's a plan of how it will be spent over a period of time

5 expense — E a share that somebody has bought in a company or business

1.2 请从方框中选择合适的单词，并以其正确形式填入空白处。

anticipate	import	expand	launch	invest

1 The government has _____ heavily in public transport.

2 It is reported that the company is considering _____ the new drug by next October.

3 No one could _____ that the industry giant would collapse one day.

4 The country has to _____ most of its raw materials since it is a small island with limited resources.

5 The computer industry has _____ greatly over the last decade.

1.3 请阅读文章，从方框中为段落选择合适的小标题。

Warren Buffett Claims These Five Steps Are the Secret to Success

Billionaire Warren Buffett did not get rich overnight. His success came from a few excellent investment decisions, starting when he was just 11 years old. At 15, his net worth sat at around $6,000 and by the age of 30, he was a millionaire. By his mid-50s, he hit the billionaire milestone. He attributes his success to a five-step formula, which he encourages others to emulate. He sets out the five steps as follows:

1 _____

Buffett challenges everyone to name the top 25 things they want from life, as this will allow

them to establish some clear goals to focus on. Buffett once asked one of his own employees why he wasn't seeking out his own life goals.

2 _____

Once you've narrowed down your goals to the top 25, you should then further select your top five. This allows you to focus on the most important things you want to achieve. Narrowing your goals down to five forces you to concentrate on your priorities, giving you a better chance of success.

3 _____

The next step is figuring out how you'll achieve these five main goals. That means making a plan. If you want a large sum of money for retirement, you need to know where to invest the money. The most successful investors know how to spot a shrewd investment opportunity.

4 _____

Once you've devised your plan on how to reach your goals, you need to stick to it, as these goals are your road map for your entire future. It's not impossible to achieve more than one of your goals at the same time. The most important thing is identifying your priorities and sticking to the plan. It's also important to make sure you give your top five priorities your full attention over anything else. Buffett says that the top five should be the sole focus, whereas the other 20 are just obstacles to the ultimate goals.

5 _____

It may seem impossible to achieve 25 major goals in life. What Buffett actually means when he says you should avoid the other 20 priorities is that they are less important than the five goals that should be achieved first. The other 20 can be achieved at some point, and he just says you should leave them until a later date. If you focus on too many things at once, they will just act as a distraction that is likely to lead to failure. So, focus on the top five first and then think about the others.

A Know your 'avoid at all costs' list and stick to it

B Formulate a plan

C Distinguish your priorities and concentrate on them

D Pick out your top five goals

E Know what you want

1.4 请画出文章中的生词和短语，通过词典确认它们的含义，并写下来。

_____

_____

主题词汇

budget /'bʌdʒɪt/ *n.* 预算
currency /'kʌrənsi/ *n.* 货币
banknote /'bæŋknəʊt/ *n.* 纸币
exchange rate 汇率
launch /lɔ:ntʃ/ *v.* 发行
inflation /ɪn'fleɪʃn/ *n.* 通货膨胀
devalue /ˌdi:'vælju:/ *v.* 贬值
stock market 证券交易（所）
shareholder /'ʃeəhəʊldə(r)/ *n.* 股东
personnel /ˌpɜ:sə'nel/ *n.* 人事部门
consultant /kən'sʌltənt/ *n.* 顾问
founder /'faʊndə(r)/ *n.* 创始人
secretary /'sekrətri/ *n.* 秘书
board director 董事
headquarters /ˌhed'kwɔ:təz/ *n.* 总部
branch office 分支机构
distribution /ˌdɪstrɪ'bju:ʃn/ *n.* 分配
anticipate /æn'tɪsɪpeɪt/ *v.* 预期
private sector 私营部门

2 能力培养

掌握应对文章生词的方法（二）

我们在第六单元学习了如何通过文章的上下文来寻找线索，进而推测生词的含义。在本单元，我们将学习三个方法，通过分析单词本身来解决生词的问题。

Tips

单词的前缀和后缀均是帮助我们判断词性的重要标准之一，例如名词的常见后缀有-ness，-ist，-ion，-er等，形容词的常见后缀有-ed，-ic，-al等。

1 分解法。如果遇到的生词是包含词缀的派生词或者是由两个或更多单词构成的合成词，我们可以通过拆分生词的方法推测其含义。例如：multinational是由前缀multi-和单词national构成的，我们知道national意为“国家的”，而multi-是表示“多的”的词缀，由此可推测multinational可能表示“多国的”。由两个单词构成的合成词一般较长，比如echolocation，由它的前后两部分echo（回声）和location（位置）即可推测本词与“回声定位”有关。

2 推测法。推测法是指通过句子的逻辑关系和单词的词性推测词义。例如：Paper notes were far lighter than the heavy, cumbersome coins. 这句话中的cumbersome和heavy是并列关系，都修饰coins。再加上句中含有比较关系，突出的是前者，即纸币的轻便，因此推测cumbersome的意义应该与heavy相近，可能意为“笨重的”。

3 忽略法。遇到完全猜不出词义的单词时，不妨直接跳过。大多数情况下，句中的其他成分也能帮助我们理解整个句子的意思。如果一个单词反复出现，它可能是一个关键词，即使不知道它的意思，也可以通过观察该词的特征，结合题目来确定答案的位置。

以上方法能够在一定程度上帮助我们应对阅读中遇到的生词，但是不可以只依赖这些方法。只有不断提升词汇量和语法水平，同时合理地运用这些方法，才能有效提升阅读速度和阅读理解能力。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

What Is a Good Profit Margin for a Farm?

A profit margin is basically the money left over after all additional costs have been fully paid. In the agricultural industry, some crops provide farmers with better profit margins than others. Let's look at the term in this way:

Anyone who starts his own farm needs to pay something called capital expenses, which allow him to own everything on the farm such as media, lights, and structural components. Once the farm is functioning, the owner then needs to start paying operational expenses. These are basically the daily costs of running the farm and include things like water, electricity, and fertiliser. The capital expenses plus the operational expenses amount to the final costs of the products the farmer is going to sell — the crops. When the products are sold, the amount of money received should be in excess of the amount paid. Basically, the difference between what you sold your products for and what is originally paid amounts to the profit margin. The goal of any business is to have a positive profit margin.

When we do market research, it is a good idea to consider which crops are more likely to make a profit. That means looking into the demand for nutrients and water of the crop, in addition to the market demand.

The aim is to grow a crop that is cheap to produce, but for which there is a high demand and willingness to pay. Farmers who grow crops using hydroponic or aquaponic methods have a unique advantage because the finished product tends to be of a much higher quality.

Profit margins contribute to the net profit, which is the total amount of money the business makes following the sale of its products. While it sounds as if making a profit means you're going to get rich, the reality is that most of the profit needs to be invested back into the business.

Successful businesses thrive because of the trade-offs and compromises businessmen make, seeking the most profitable way of benefiting the business. For example, it's possible to make a profit by growing and selling a high volume of produce at a lower price, just as it is possible to profit by selling specialised produce at a lower volume and a higher price.

It's possible to succeed in a number of ways, but it all depends on your business model.

1 请根据词缀判断下列单词的词性，并判断它们的含义。

单词	词性	含义
1) structural	_____	_____
2) fertiliser	_____	_____
3) willingness	_____	_____
4) hydroponic	_____	_____
5) specialised	_____	_____

2 请在文章中画出定义和解释profit margin的句子。

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Maslow's Hierarchy of Needs



The Hierarchy of Needs theory was conceived by psychologist Abraham Maslow in a 1943 paper entitled 'A Theory of Human Motivation'. The basis of the theory is that individuals' most basic needs must be satisfied before they are able to fulfil a higher level of human potential. The hierarchy consists of five levels. The first level is to ensure humans can survive, which means prioritising food, water, shelter, etc. The second level is their safety, which can include personal and financial security, as well as health care. The third level is love and belonging, which means nurturing friendship, relationships, and families. The fourth is the need to feel confident and respected by those around us. Finally, the ultimate goal of all human beings is self-actualisation, which is to optimise one's potential — whatever that may entail — to the fullest capacity.

The most basic aspects of Maslow's hierarchy are survival, safety, as well as solid relationships and confidence, before the ultimate aim is achieved. Modern theorists have started to look at how the Hierarchy of Needs can be applied to the workplace. Chip Conley, the founder of the Joie de Vivre hotel chain and former head of Global Hospitality and Strategy at Airbnb, applied Maslow's theory to improve his business. He believed many managers found it hard to fully comprehend the abstract nature of self-actualisation and thus focused more on the lower levels of the pyramid instead.

Conley discovered that he was able to focus on the self-actualisation of his staff by getting to know them better. During one exercise, Conley gathered several members of his team responsible for housekeeping around a table and asked them an abstract question: If someone

from another planet arrived and saw what kind of work you did, how would they define you? The answers included 'The Serenity Sisters', 'The Clutter Busters', and 'The Peace of Mind Police'. In their eyes, their work was more important than just cleaning. They felt they had an obligation to the guests staying in the properties and wanted to ensure their stay was pleasant.

The most important thing for Conley's staff was their sense of purpose and belonging to a group with shared aims. It was also important for them to demonstrate their importance and, as a result, feel valued by their employer. If people are to achieve optimum productivity, they need to feel they have support in other aspects of their life beyond work. This may mean they are given flexible working hours and more time to spend with their relatives, without having to worry about losing pay.

1 请在文章中画出与hierarchy具有相似比喻意义的一个单词。

2 请用所学知识猜测下列单词的含义，并查询词典确认猜测是否正确。

1) prioritise _____

2) self-actualisation _____

3) theorist _____

4) obligation _____

5) optimum _____

3 请根据上下文，判断The Serenity Sisters，The Clutter Busters和The Peace of Mind Police这三个称呼是褒义还是贬义。这三个称呼中的生词是否影响了你对文章的理解?

3 题型讲解

多项选择题

在雅思阅读考试中，多项选择题分为两类，一类是考查对全文的整体理解，另一类是考查局部的细节信息。在读题时，应该首先判断题目考查的是全文理解还是细节信息，然后快速在文中定位答案。多项选择题的考查形式多为五选二或七选五，题目要求中会明确写出Which TWO或Which FIVE等，并且会将数字以加粗体显示，审题时应该多加注意。评分时，多项选择题按照回答正确的选项数目计分，因此不存在因选错一个选项而使整道题目失分的情况。

Tips

在单项选择题和多项选择题的选项中，含有绝对意义的表达（如absolutely，all，none等）通常与文章内容不符，大多数情况下可以直接排除。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Understanding Corporate Culture

A What does corporate culture mean and what effect does it have on the workplace? Corporate culture relates to the environment and expectations within a company or organisation, defining the essence of what the organisation or company stands for. It encompasses a

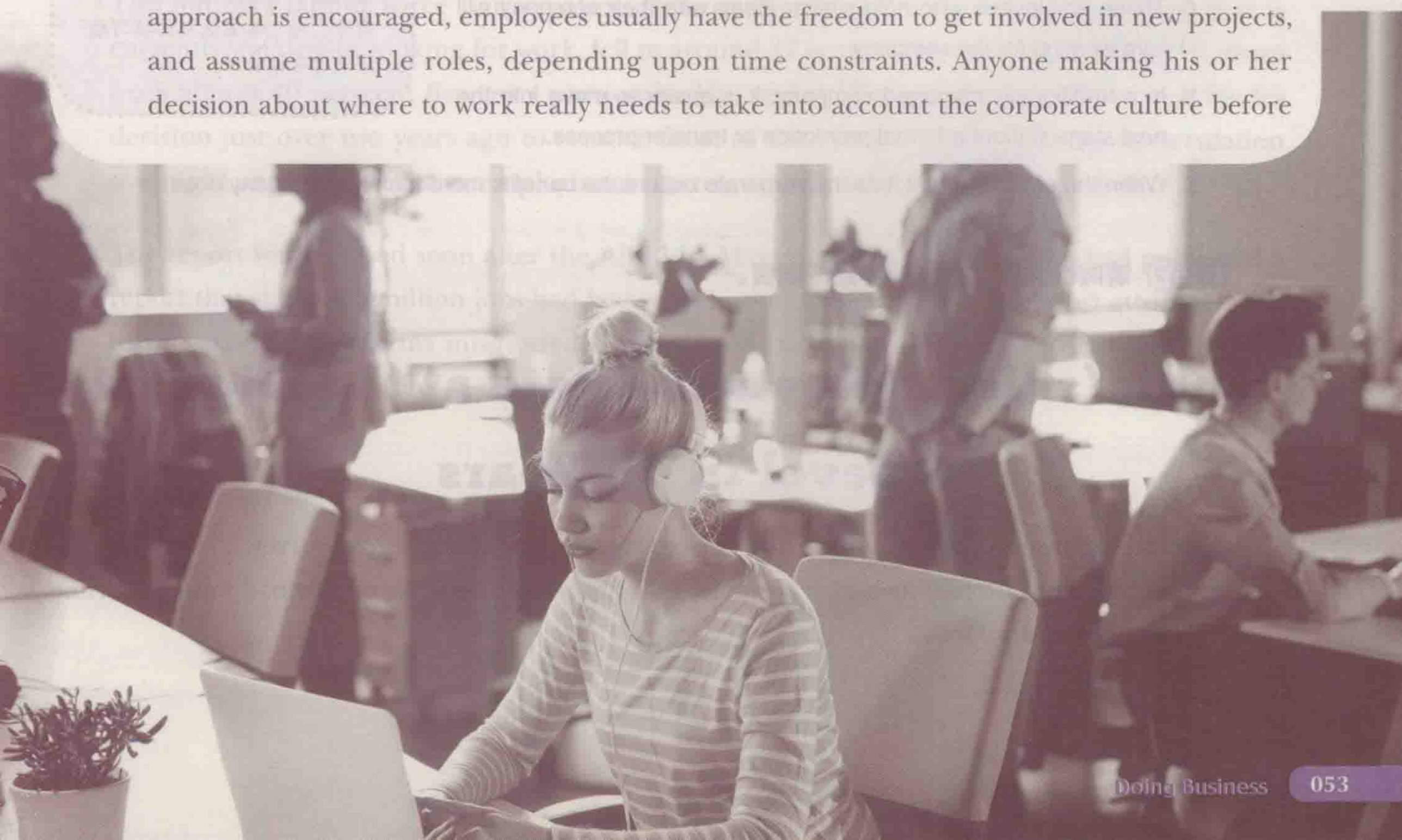
multitude of different elements, including work environment, company goals, values, ethics, and vision. For instance, some companies operate with a team-oriented culture, where employees have a wide involvement in decision-making. Other companies, though, may take a more traditional approach and adopt a formal management style. Some companies decide to create a casual work environment with few rules and restrictions on what employees can do.

B One of the most talked-about examples of a company with a clear corporate culture is Google. Google offers employees a relaxed environment to work in, even though Google is a vast, international enterprise. Lunch breaks are taken in the office café, with people able to sit wherever they want and have a chat with other employees from different teams. The company stresses that every employee is a hands-on contributor to its success, and everyone is encouraged to participate in weekly meetings where strategy is discussed.

C Corporate culture can make a real difference in how employees feel about the company they work for and the kind of work they do. People usually enjoy work when their needs and values are consistent with those of the company they work for. If people enjoy their work, it's easier for them to get along with colleagues and, also, they tend to be more productive.

D People who find themselves working in an environment where they don't fit in with the corporate culture are generally less productive. For instance, people who enjoy working alone, but who end up working for an organisation that requires teamwork are likely to be less happy and less efficient.

E Companies that operate with a traditional management style often have clearly defined job positions and responsibilities, and it may be more difficult to make progress without going through a formal promotion or transfer process. In environments where a more casual approach is encouraged, employees usually have the freedom to get involved in new projects, and assume multiple roles, depending upon time constraints. Anyone making his or her decision about where to work really needs to take into account the corporate culture before



making any commitment.

F It's important for employers to consider what kind of corporate culture to establish. When employees enjoy the culture of a company, they are more likely to commit to it for a long term. If employees are happy, they are more productive and then everyone benefits.

1 请判断下列信息在文中所处的段落。

1) the comparison between two different corporate cultures

2) the example of Google's corporate culture

3) the definition of corporate culture

2 *Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

1) Which **TWO** of the following statements are mentioned concerning Google's corporate culture?

A Google is the No.1 company in terms of the searching service.

B Google has a very characteristic corporate culture.

C Every employee is under a high-pressure working environment.

D Employees have their own resting places during the break time.

E There is a weekly-meeting system to stimulate new ideas to improve employees' work.

2) Which **TWO** of the following statements are correct according to the passage?

A Corporate culture can decide if the organisation or company will succeed.

B There are a variety of corporate cultures that we can find contradicting with one another.

C Those employees who hold similar ideas with their company will love working for the company.

D In a traditionally managed company, it is easier to move into the next stage without a formal promotion or transfer process.

E When the employee matches the corporate culture, he benefits more than the company does.

Tips

当题干中出现in terms of, concerning, about, on等限定某个关键信息的单词或短语时，需根据关键信息定位到文中涉及该部分的段落，从中搜寻正确答案，如第2题第1）小题；当题干中包含according to the passage, mentioned in the passage等指示全篇文章的表述时，则需从全文寻找信息，如第2题第2）小题。另外，填写答题卡时要注意：多项选择题的每个答案选项都对应一个题号，对于答案选项的填写顺序没有硬性要求。

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

India's Unemployment Rate at the Highest Level in 45 Years

The unemployment rate in India is 6.1 per cent, according to an official survey. This means the unemployment rate is at its highest level in 45 years. All of this is seemingly bad news for Prime Minister Narendra Modi.

Following the high-profile resignations of those who reviewed the job data, the political controversy over the survey erupted, claiming publication had been delayed and blaming interference by other state agencies.

The survey was carried out in mid-2017 and ended 12 months later. The findings illustrated that the unemployment rate was just over 6 per cent, which was higher than the previous highest point reached in the early part of the 1970s. At that time, India was emerging from a war with Pakistan and subsequently suffered the consequences of a worldwide fall in oil prices. The unemployment rate then reached a peak of just over 5 per cent.

The government questioned the truthfulness of the recent report with some sources claiming it had not been verified. The sources claimed the government had not released data on employment as the data was still being processed and was not actually ready for release.

Rahul Gandhi, the leader of the main opposition Congress party, claimed the latest figures were equal to 'a national disaster' for India. During the last few years, the Indian economy has enjoyed rapid growth, accelerating at an annual rate of around 7 per cent, but the uneven nature of this growth has meant that new jobs haven't been created to keep up with demand.

Large numbers of young people constitute a significant proportion of the unemployed, with 18.7 per cent of urban males aged between 15 and 29 currently jobless, and an unemployment rate of 27.2 per cent of city-dwelling females in this age group. The figures indicate that Modi's ambitious 'Make in India' project, which was devised to increase the share of domestic manufacturing to almost a quarter of the country's GDP while creating new jobs for more than one million young people, has been a failure.

The nation's labour force participation rate, or the proportion of the population that is currently working or looking for work, fell to around 37 per cent between 2017 and 2018, down from almost 40 per cent five years previously. The report also goes on to explore how Modi's decision just over two years ago to remove most of the country's banknotes from circulation overnight impacted on the unemployment figures, as well as the economy as a whole.

The report was released soon after the All India Manufacturers' Organisation had published a report that stated 3.5 million jobs had been lost in the last two years. The report attributed this to the economic reforms misguidedly introduced by Modi, which had led to hundreds of thousands of people losing their jobs in small firms.

*Choose **FIVE** letters, **A–G**.*

Which **FIVE** of the following statements are correct according to the passage?

A Inadequate jobs to meet the market were a substantial downside for the rapid growth of Indian economy.

B The report also showed the impact of Modi's banknote-elimination project on the unemployment rate.

C The last highest point of the unemployment rate in India was recorded in the early 1970s.

D Narendra Modi is facing a tough situation due to the revealed infomation of the unemployment rate.

E The 'Make in India' project has proven to be a great success in the first stage and is still functioning well.

F The proportion of the nation's labour force fell from 40 per cent to 37 per cent within 2018.

G The political controversy was to blame that the government should have publicised the statistics earlier.

4 课后练习

请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The History of Chinese Currency

Whenever money comes up in our conversation, the things that come to mind are paper bills, or 'banknotes' as they're known, and coins. Leather, however, is definitely something we wouldn't think of. But that's exactly what happened in China around 2,100 years ago: The Chinese invented the leather banknote. According to historians, this was the early banknote ever put into circulation by a nation, and it was made from white deerskin. Today's banknotes are far smaller than the leather currency used during that time. The deerskin was cut into small pieces and painted around the edges with bright colours, to form something that could be used over and over during transactions. It was during this time that one of the first actual systems of trade and commerce began.

The Chinese can also take credit for the invention of paper currency. Indeed, the Chinese had made paper currency an integral part of their economy long before European nations began to accept the banknote. The earliest paper currency in European history dates back to the 13th century when explorer Marco Polo recorded his experience of witnessing Chinese paper currency. Despite the practicality of these banknotes, which were far lighter than the heavy, cumbersome coins that were in wide circulation, Europe did not officially enter the paper-currency era until 1661. The first paper money in Europe was issued by a bank in Sweden.

Scholars are not surprised that China was the first civilisation to adopt paper currency. Long before the introduction of leather banknotes, the Chinese had been using some form of currency. Some estimate that the origin of physical currency in China dated back about 3,000 years, before the leather currency was used. Some are even convinced that Chinese currency

dates back to the New Stone Age, during which time China first began trading goods for cowry shells. These small shells resembled small eggs and came in a range of different colours and patterns. Incidentally, China wasn't the only nation to use cowry shells for currency, as evidence suggested they were used in places such as Africa, Australia, and America over the centuries.

The first emperor of the Qin Dynasty, Qin Shi Huang, lived from 259 BC to 210 BC and his reign began in 247 BC. He ruled over China until his death at the age of 49 in 210 BC. He introduced a uniform monetary system, which meant all the types of currency that had been used until then made way for copper coins, which became China's official currency. Later on, the leather and paper banknotes entered circulation and were used as official currency alongside copper coins until the late 19th century. It was during this time that China's modern-day currency was introduced and became the official currency of the nation.

In today's world, all nations use some forms of paper banknotes and / or coin currency. All of this stems from the influence of Chinese civilisation. Currently, renminbi is the official currency used in China.

1 *Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Which **TWO** of the following statements about ancient currency in China are mentioned in the passage?

A China invented the first currency around 2,100 years ago.

B The early leather banknote was particularly tailored and coloured to sustain longer.

C According to various theories, the earliest date of the appearance of the Chinese currency can be traced back to about 3,000 years ago.

D Emperor Qin Shi Huang established a system in which copper coins became the official currency.

E The modern-day currency replaced copper coins before the late 19th century.

2 *Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Which **TWO** of the following statements are correct about currency in the world?

A European countries entered a paper-currency system much later than China did.

B The earliest record of currency in Europe was in the 13th century.

C Switzerland was the first country to use paper notes among European countries.

D There were several cultures once using shells as their currency.

E Nowadays, all nations adopt the banknote-only currency system.

Speaking

1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择意思相近的单词或短语，填入表格中对应的位置。

appealing	skilled	charming	lucrative	profitable
conveniently located	capable	qualified	well-situated	

attractive	well-located	moneymaking	well-trained

1.2 请从方框中选择合适的单词，并以其正确形式填入空白处。

buy　　pay　　spend　　lend　　save　　check　　borrow　　lose

1 I tried to borrow some money, but nobody agreed _____ me any.

2 If you don't want to risk _____ your money, don't gamble.

3 I wanted _____ money, so I bought a cheaper laptop.

4 I refuse _____ such a high price for a T-shirt.

5 After _____ the price of her mother's favourite necklace, she decided _____ some money from her father.

2 能力培养

2.1 语法训练——宾语从句

❶ 由that引导的宾语从句

动词+that引导的宾语从句

- We **suspected that it was a trick to get our money**. 我们怀疑这是一个骗钱的诡计。
- Why don't you **tell** him **that you are too ill to go on working**?
  你为什么不告诉他你病得很严重，不能继续工作了呢?

it作形式宾语，宾语从句后置

- I took **it** for granted **that they would do what they promised**. 我理所当然地认为他们会做他们承诺过的事。
- I feel **it** a delightful thing **that our proposal was adopted**. 我们的提案被采纳了，真是件让人高兴的事。

❷ 由连接代词 / 连接副词引导的宾语从句

- Only you can decide **who is the best choice for the project**. 只有你能决定谁才是这个项目的最佳人选。
- I don't know **where I can go if I lose the job**. 如果我失业了，我不知道还能去哪里。
- We are talking about **whether we should admit students into our club**.
  我们正在讨论是否应该允许学生加入我们的俱乐部。
- I wondered **when you would be promoted the next time**, considering your wonderful job done here.
  考虑到你在这里的出色表现，我在想你下一次升职会在什么时候。

❸ 由关系代词型what / whatever引导的宾语从句

- Show me **what you've bought**. 把你买的东西给我看看。
- They cannot do **what they love** as a full-time career. What a pity!
  他们不能把热爱的工作作为全职工作，多么遗憾啊！
- He was indifferent to **what other colleagues were doing** but only focused on his own job.
  他对同事们在做的事毫不关心，只专注于自己的工作。
- I always succeed in **whatever I try**. 我尝试做什么通常都会成功。
- She would tell him **whatever news she got**. 她会把她听到的任何消息都告诉他。

练习1 请将下列句子翻译成英文。

1 很多人认为佩戴昂贵的手表可以彰显自己的财富。

2 我们现在正在讨论是否应该合并这三家公司。

3 我将设法查出这台机器是否正常。

练习2 请用已学词汇和语法描述图片。



Example

No one can deny that it is essential to be punctual at work...

2.2 发音训练——意群和句子的停顿

❶ 意群

一个句子可以按照意义、语法结构和语调分成几个部分，每个部分称为一个意群。我们可以用符号“|”来划分意群。从语义和语法层面来讲，意群必须是能表达某种意思的一个词、一组词、一个短语或一个分句、从句或主句。从语调来讲，意群必须是可以用降调或升调来朗读的一个语调单位。

请听录音，跟读模仿以下例句，纠正自己的发音。

一个较长的句子通常有两个或三个意群。根据意群在句子中的位置，可以将其分为句首意群、句中意群和句末意群。

University departments | should provide more internships for students | to acquire some necessary skills.
（句首意群） （句中意群） （句末意群）

大学的各个院系应该为学生提供更多的实习机会，以使他们掌握一些必备技能。

在一个长句中，句首意群的语调常为升调，表示句子的开始，意思尚不完整，需下文补充。当然，如果句首意群所表示的是比较完整的意义，也可使用降调。

The company should be more efficient, | in another word, | improve the productivity.
公司应该更高效。换句话说，应该提高生产力。

句中意群通常也为升调，理由和句首意群常用升调的原因相同。如果句中意群意义完整，语义重要，并且和后面的部分联系并不密切，则用降调。

Making plans | is one of the key factors to be successful, | even though plans sometimes change.
制订计划是成功的关键因素之一，尽管计划有时会变。

句末意群在较长的陈述句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句以及感叹句中通常用降调。

Last month, | she went to Florida | to visit her client. 上个月，她去了佛罗里达州拜访客户。

What are you going to do | when you finish school? 你毕业之后打算做什么呢?

Would you like to work in Beijing | or Hong Kong? 你想在北京还是香港工作?

What a wonderful time | we had together! 我们一起共度的时光多么美好!

❷ 句子的停顿

在交流的过程中，停顿一方面是为了换气，另一方面是为了使意思表达得更清楚。标点符号往往决定了句中停顿的长短。

请听录音，跟读模仿以下例句，纠正自己的发音。

在使用句号的句子末尾往往有较长的停顿。

Money plays an important role in our daily life. However, it's not the most important thing.
金钱在我们的日常生活中发挥着重要作用。但是，它不是最重要的东西。

在长句中，意群与意群之间的停顿较短。这些停顿处往往有逗号、分号、冒号等。

Managers, doctors, and businessmen are likely to have a relatively higher salary, and that may not change in the future. 经理、医生和商人有可能会有相对更高的薪水，这一点在未来可能不会改变。

3 话题讲解

3.1 雅思口语Part 1——工作类



工作类的话题一般会讨论做什么工作，为什么从事这份工作，以及对这份工作的感受等。



所以需要熟记一些常见的职业名称及其基本职责。



是的。此外，还可能会聊到工作满意度、工作价值观等比较抽象的主观性问题。



那可以多谈谈自己对理想工作的期待、工作的意义等。

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

- Are you looking forward to working? [Why / Why not?]
- Will you enjoy your job? [Why / Why not?]
- Which career will you choose in the future?
- Why do you want to choose this kind of work?

话题表达

seek a job / job hunting 找工作
white-collar worker 白领
university lecturer 大学讲师
teaching assistant 助教
finance director 财务经理
accountant officer 会计主管
brain worker 脑力工作者
manual labour 体力劳动
welfare system 福利体系
job security 工作保障

I will spend my time in (doing)... 我将把我的时间用于（做）……
I will enjoy my first day in the job since... 我将享受我工作的第一天，因为……
It will be a meaningful day because... 那将会是有意义的一天，因为……
I choose this type of work for the reason that... 我选择这类工作的原因是……
I am looking forward to working in... industry. 我期待着在……行业工作。

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

I want to be an English teacher who works to improve the speaking skills of students. Students are always eager to learn something new and then talk to others, which will make me feel needed. I will teach them

useful expressions to describe objects, events, and feelings. Being a teacher might be related closely to the sense of fulfilment to some extent, and people can always obtain real satisfaction from helping the young. Moreover, it will be delightful to meet people with different ideas and explore more about what they are interested in.

3.2 雅思口语Part 2——商业类

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

Describe an occasion when you received very good service from a company or shop.

You should say:

what kind of company / shop it was

what you needed from the company / shop

who in the company / shop helped you

and explain why you think the service was very good.

思路解析与拓展



雅思口语Part 2商业类话题涵盖的范围十分广泛，从具体的物品到相关的经历都有可能会涉及。本题难度不大，因为大部分人应该都有过接受优质服务的体验。



没错，日常生活中就有很多这样的例子。比如在餐厅排队等位时享受免费的按摩服务，在参观展览时聆听志愿者的解说，乘坐飞机时被免费升舱等。



不过重点还是要从自己实际的感受出发，描述接受服务时的心情如何。



回答时还要注意正确使用不同的时态。

话题表达

customer service department 客户服务部门

after-sales service 售后服务

complaint calls from customers 客户投诉电话

a monotone voice 单调的声音

on hold 推迟；搁置

electronic gadget 电子设备

a pleasant-mannered lady 一位举止优雅的女士

a timely response 及时的答复

With regard to..., I... 关于……，我……

I am particularly impressed with... 我对……印象特别深刻。

I am specifically talking about... 我特别谈到的是……

Owing to the reason that..., I... 由于……，我……

I was expecting...However... 我本来期待……，但是……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

Once I contacted a company's customer service department, I was impressed with its after-sales service. I am going to specifically talk about the employee who answered complaint calls from customers.

As a big fan of electronic products, I have bought a variety of unnecessary electronic gadgets. Now and then, I encountered different problems. For example, they broke down or the speed was slow. Once, my laptop broke down. I tried hard to fix it but there was no use. Admitting that I was not proficient in mending high-technology devices, I started pressing the hotline numbers.

I was expecting a monotone voice after being put on hold for a few minutes. However, to my surprise, a pleasant-mannered lady with a sweet voice was on the other end. She introduced herself and asked how she could assist me. My technical issues were resolved in a timely response.

This is the only company that made me enjoy the experience of being a valuable customer. Its after-sales service sets an example for other companies.

4 课后练习

4.1 请选择正确的选项，完成句子。

1 If you purchase something, you

A rent it. B buy it. C use it. D lose it.

2 Customers can be referred to as

A stores. B clothes. C clients. D products.

3 If you buy clothes at a discount, you

A spend less money than usual. B are deceived by the advertisement.

C pay the bill by cash. D find that it costs more than you expected.

4.2 请回答以下问题。

- How effectively do schools prepare students for jobs?
- How can individuals achieve a balance between work and life?
- Describe the role money plays in your life.

  You should say:

  how important money is in your life

  what you spend money on and how much you save / invest

  if you spend money in the same way as others do

  and explain whether you consider money as the most important thing in your life.
- Describe a job you would be good at.

  You should say:

  what the job is

  what skills or abilities are required for the job

  why you are attracted by this job

  and explain how you might get this job in the future.

Writing

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据中文提示，拼写出下列单词。

1 压力 s_r_s_　　2 事业 c_r_ _r　　3 薪水 s_l_ _y

4 平衡 b_l_ _ce　　5 利润 p_o_ _t　　6 市场 m_r_ _t

7 忠诚的 l_y_l　　8 竞争 c_m_e_ _

1.2 请使用1.1中的单词填空，完成句子。

1 The enterprise is struggling to cultivate their _____ customers.

2 As firms _____ for workers rather than workers for jobs, the average wage is rising.

3 Sports superstars receive a considerable amount of _____.

4 Today's workers have lost control over their life under the _____ from bosses.

5 There is a great uncertainty in the job _____ when the economy is slowing down.

6 The efforts of companies to maximise their _____ are likely to bring benefits to the society.

2 能力培养

2.1 词汇表达

❶ 核心单词及其派生词

核心单词	派生词
encourage /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ/ *v.* 鼓励	encouragement /ɪn'kʌrɪdʒmənt/ *n.* 鼓励
motivate /'məʊtɪveɪt/ *v.* 激发	motivation /ˌməʊtɪ'veɪʃn/ *n.* 动力
expect /ɪk'spekt/ *v.* 期待	expectation /ˌekspek'teɪʃn/ *n.* 期待
recruit /rɪ'kru:t/ *v.* 招聘	recruitment /rɪ'kru:tmənt/ *n.* 招聘
commerce /'kɒmɜ:s/ *n.* 商业	commercial /kə'mɜ:ʃl/ *adj.* 商业的
efficiency /ɪ'fɪʃnsi/ *n.* 效率	efficient /ɪ'fɪʃnt/ *adj.* 有效率的
manage /'mænɪdʒ/ *v.* 管理	management /'mænɪdʒmənt/ *n.* 管理
retire /rɪ'taɪə(r)/ *v.* 退休	retirement /rɪ'taɪəmənt/ *n.* 退休
fulfil /fʊl'fɪl/ *v.* 完成	fulfilment /fʊl'fɪlmənt/ *n.* 实现
prospect /'prɒspekt/ *n.* 前景	prospective /prə'spektɪv/ *adj.* 预期的

❷ 常用短语

poor communication 缺乏沟通

corporate culture 企业文化

unemployment rate 失业率

lay off 解雇

an increase in salary 加薪

flexible work schedule 弹性工作时间表

a balanced lifestyle 平衡的生活方式

team cooperation 团队合作

early retirement 提前退休

a sense of fulfilment 一种满足感

mass production 大规模生产

boost production rates 提高生产率

expand production 扩大生产

profit maximisation 利润最大化

physical labour 体力劳动

career path 职业道路

career prospect 事业前景

work overtime 加班

work efficiency 工作效率

job instability 工作不稳定

job satisfaction 工作满意度

job expectation 工作期望

economic recession 经济不景气

economic recovery 经济复苏

financial crisis 金融危机

free trade 自由贸易

earn a living 谋生

new employee orientation 新员工入职培训

labour market 劳动力市场

❸ 句型及例句

...is one of the most important issues. ……是最重要的问题之一。

- How to solve the high unemployment rate **is one of the most important issues** of this country.
  如何解决高失业率是这个国家面临的最重要的问题之一。

People are divided in their opinion regarding... 人们对……意见不一。

- **People are divided in their opinion regarding** the influence technology brings to the workplace.
  人们对科技给工作场所带来的影响意见不一。

It is widely acknowledged that... 人们普遍认为……

- **It is widely acknowledged that** working overtime consistently will have a negative influence on family relations. 人们普遍认为，经常加班会对家庭关系产生负面影响。

spark off a debate about... 引发一场关于……的讨论

- Concerns about current economic slowdown are **sparking a debate about** the future of the economy.
  对目前经济放缓的担忧正引发一场有关未来经济状况的讨论。

练习 **请从方框中选择适合的表达填空，完成句子。**

balance between work and life	labour market	earn a living
unemployment rate	mass production	were laid off

1 He finally found a good job in this satisfactory _____.

2 The economy in this country is spinning out of control because of the rising _____.

3 More office staff find it hard to keep a proper _____.

4 One-fifth of workers in this company _____ because of the economic recession.

5 Hopefully, the product will go into _____ in the future.

6 The recent graduates need to find ways to _____ and probably, repay their student loans.

2.2 语法重点

❶ 被动语态

被动语态最基本的形式为“be + 及物动词的过去分词”，其变化如下：

	过去	现在	将来
一般时态	was / were done	am / is / are done	shall / will be done
进行时态	was / were being done	am / is / are being done	
完成时态	had been done	have / has been done	will have been done

以下三种句型的主动句可以变为被动句：

主谓宾句型

将原来的宾语变为主语，原来的主语放在介词by后面。如果主动句的主语为泛指，则被动句中可以不指出。

- It is known that we cannot control the weather. 众所周知，我们是不能控制天气的。
- It is known that the weather cannot be controlled by us. 众所周知，天气是不能被我们控制的。
- It is known that the weather cannot be controlled. 众所周知，天气是不能被控制的。

主谓双宾句型

将原来的直接宾语（物）或间接宾语（人）变为主语。将直接宾语（物）变为主语时，通常间接宾语前应添加适当的介词。

- The company gave every staff an extra bonus for the project.
  公司给参与这个项目的每个员工都发了额外的奖金。

- Every staff was given an extra bonus for the project.
  每个员工都因这个项目获得了额外的奖金。（间接宾语变为主语）
- An extra bonus was given to every staff for the project.
  额外奖金分发给了参与这个项目的每个员工。（直接宾语变为主语）

主谓宾补句型

将原来的宾语变为主语，宾语补足语变为主语补足语。

- Working from home allows workers to save the time of their daily commute.
  在家工作可以省去员工每天的通勤时间。
- Workers are allowed to save the time of their daily commute by working from home.
  在家工作可以省去员工每天的通勤时间。
- People consider the machine as a good helper at work.
  人们认为机器是工作中的好帮手。
- The machine is considered as a good helper at work.
  机器被视为工作中的好帮手。

❷ 被动语态在写作中的用法

在转述他人观点或表达想法或感受时使用被动语态，会使句子显得更客观，但要注意不要滥用。常用句型包括：

主语 + be + 过去分词 + 不定式

- Some youngsters are believed to be immature and unreliable in the workplace.
  有些年轻人在工作中被认为是不成熟和不可靠的。

该句型中常用的动词有：ask，consider，estimate，expect，know，report，see，think等。

It + be + 过去分词 + that从句

- It is felt that more consumption will create more waste.
  人们认为，买得越多浪费越多。

该句型中常用的动词有：advise，agree，argue，believe，claim，decide，expect，hope，predict，report，say，suggest，think等。

Tips

被动语态和系表结构的区别：

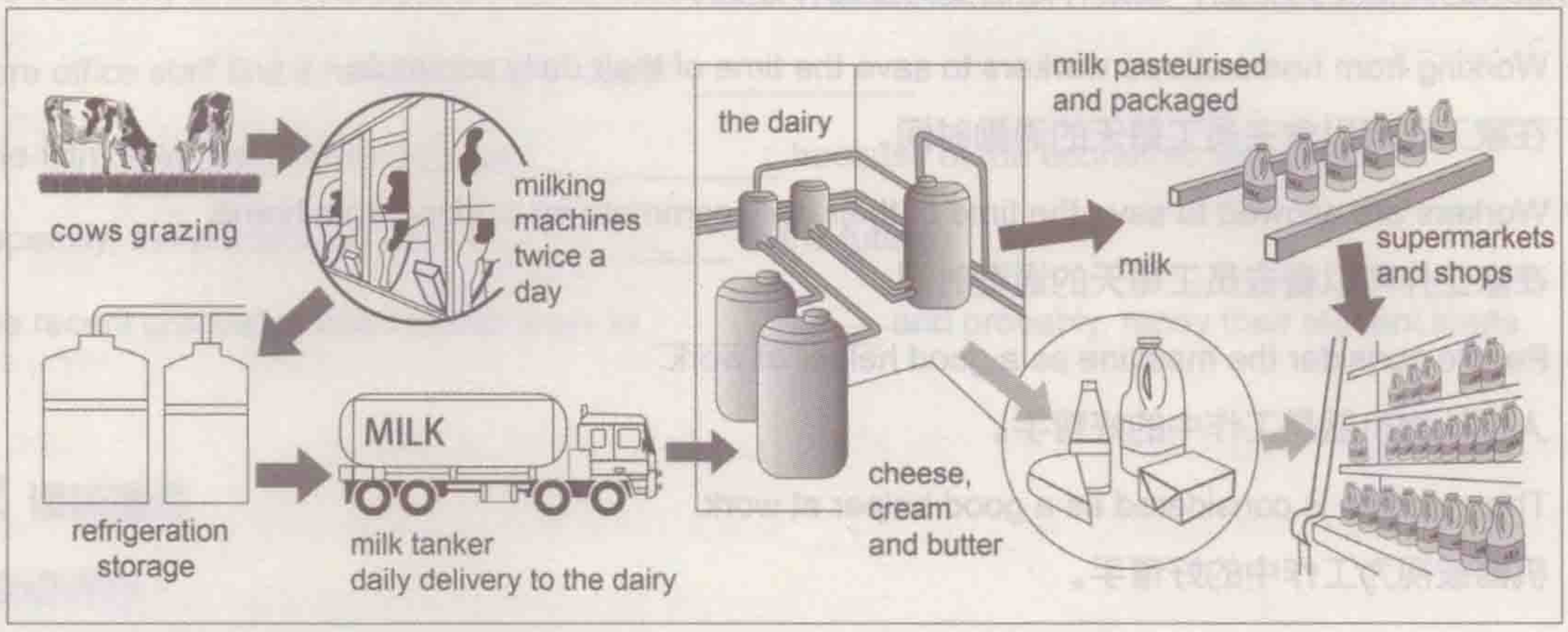
This work was done last night. 昨晚完成了这项工作。（被动语态，done为过去分词，表示动态的动作）

This work was done. 这项工作完成了。（系表结构，done为形容词，表示静态的状态）

练习 **请根据题目，使用括号中单词的被动形式填空，完成短文。**

The diagram below illustrates the process of milk production.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.



The diagram shows the different stages involved in the production of milk. According to the diagram, it is clear that there are several steps in the process, beginning with grazing milking cows and ending with placing the final milk products in the stores for sale.

First and foremost, the cows which 1 _____ (feed) on the grassland 2 _____ (milk) by machines twice a day to get the original material. Then, that amount of milk 3 _____ (store) in the refrigerator to cool down. After this, the milk 4 _____ (deliver) by tankers to the dairy every day.

In the next step, part of the milk 5 _____ (make) into such milk products as cheese, cream or butter, whereas the remaining milk is pasteurised and packaged into bottles on the flowing board. The final stage of this process is that these bottles of milk and other products 6 _____ (transport) to supermarkets or shops, ready for customers to buy.

2.3 衔接方式

❶ in fact

表示“事实上，实际上”，通常用在句首，其后用逗号隔开，用于强调所陈述的内容。

- **In fact**, young people enjoy the frequent change in living and working places.
  事实上，年轻人喜欢频繁变换生活和工作场所。

❷ on top of...

表示“除……以外”，用于补充说明新的信息。

- He gets commission **on top of** his salary. 除工资外，他还会得到佣金。

❸ what is worse

表示“更糟糕的是……”，通常用于句首，其后用逗号隔开，用于补充信息，表达递进的逻辑关系，引出事物消极的一面。

- The increasing unemployment rate will trigger many social problems. **What is worse**, the crime rate may also increase with it.
  不断上升的失业率将引发许多社会问题。更糟的是，犯罪率也可能随之上升。

❹ for one thing...for another...

表示“一方面……另一方面……”，通常用于对所陈述的观点展开分析。

- A large population is both a burden and a benefit to a country. **For one thing**, it needs to consume a large number of resources. **For another**, it will have a large consumer market.
  人口众多对一个国家来说既是负担也是好处。一方面，人需要消耗大量的资源；另一方面，国家将拥有一个巨大的消费市场。

❺ on the whole

表示“总之，基本上”，通常用于句首，其后用逗号隔开，用于总结信息。

- **On the whole**, I believe that businesses should take some social responsibilities.
  总体来说，我认为企业应该承担一些社会责任。

❻ fortunately

表示“幸运地”，通常用于句首，其后用逗号隔开，引出事情积极的一面。

- **Fortunately**, the upcoming job boom could help relieve the increasing social pressure.
  幸运的是，即将到来的就业热潮有助于缓解日益增加的社会压力。

练习 **请使用前面学过的衔接词或短语填空，完成句子。**

1 _____, I certainly agree that more measures should be taken to tackle the income inequality.

2 _____, the economy of this country is expected to recover after the great depression.

3 Long-term overwork will decrease working efficiency greatly. _____, it will also have a negative influence on the health of the staff.

4 _____, an interview is a necessary part of the recruitment process.

5 _____ the influence on productivity, working overtime consistently will leave staff little time for their families.

6 In the workplace, automation has proved to be both a boon and a bane. _____, it frees workers from boring physical labour. _____, it is destroying job opportunities.

3 题型讲解

3.1 商业类话题

雅思写作大作文的主体段通常包含以下几个部分：

idea	观点
explanation	解释观点
further explanation / example	进一步解释或举例
detail / result of the example	细节或举例的结果
additional information	补充信息
transition	转折
comparison	对比
conclusion	结论

Tips

在雅思写作大作文的主体段中，“观点”“解释观点”“结论”是必备项。同时，主体段也可能包括“进一步解释或举例”“细节或举例的结果”“补充信息”“转折”“对比”等内容，但不是必备项，且出现顺序可以根据实际情况灵活调整。

请以下面的题目为例，学习大作文主体段的写作。

A large number of young people cannot find a job after leaving school. What problems will youth unemployment cause for individuals and the society? What measures should be taken to reduce unemployment among young people?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

❶ 考题分析

该题目为“问题 + 措施”类题型，中心话题为：年轻人的失业问题。文章中需要阐述年轻人失业所引发的问题，并给出解决措施。

❷ 段落组织

主体段1 问题

idea	The **high unemployment rate** among the young could cause various forms of social problems.
explanation	Without **a decent job and salary**, it is extremely difficult for young people to **make a living** and raise their families.
example	They are forced to try other approaches, like **getting involved in illegal activities**.
result of the example	That will directly increase the crime rate of the nation, making the society more unstable.
conclusion	Clearly, **youth unemployment** could lead to a high level of **social instability**.

观点	年轻人的高失业率可能导致各种形式的社会问题。
解释观点	没有一份体面的工作和薪水，年轻人很难谋生养家。
举例	他们被迫尝试其他方法，如参与非法活动。
举例的结果	这将直接增加国家的犯罪率，使社会变得更加不稳定。
结论	显然，年轻人失业可能会导致严重的社会不稳定。

主体段2 措施

idea	**The most effective measure** will be to make national education focus not only on improving students' **academic performance** but also on equipping them with the skills they will need once they start a job.
explanation	The shortage of these skills is the main reason why a company prefers a person with work experience rather than **a fresh graduate**.
example	For example, new graduates may **dress improperly for work**, answer calls on the speakerphone or express personal opinions whatever the occasion is.
detail	They do not even realise some of their **behaviour** is improper.
conclusion	Therefore, it is necessary for colleges to invite senior workers to train students in **office norms** and prepare them for the workplace.
观点	最有效的措施将是使国家教育不仅注重提高学生的学业成绩，也注重使学生掌握参加工作后所需要的技能。
解释观点	这些技能的缺乏也正是公司更偏好有工作经验的人而不是应届毕业生的主要原因。
举例	例如，应届毕业生可能上班穿着不得体，用免提接听电话或不分场合地表达个人意见。
细节	他们甚至没有意识到他们的某些行为是不合适的。
结论	因此，大学有必要邀请职场老员工对学生进行办公室规范的培训，为他们进入职场做好准备。

练习 **请根据题目，判断两个主体段范文中句子的作用。**

Younger people who need employment have to compete with experienced people. What problems does this cause? And what are the solutions?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

主体段1 问题

A main problem expected is that more young employees are likely to suffer unemployment.	1 _____
Compared with those experienced workers, the new graduates are mostly relatively limited in work experience and communication skills.	2 _____
For example, young employees need instruction at work and may spend some time adapting to the working environment.	3 _____
Therefore, many employers prefer to recruit older people with high working efficiency rather than those who just graduate from university.	4 _____
This will directly lead to a high unemployment rate in the young.	5 _____

主体段2 措施

Personally, I feel that academic institutions should make efforts to tackle this issue.	6 _____
They are supposed to be responsible for helping youngsters adapt to the job market.	7 _____
For the younger ones, education should include some career-oriented lectures besides theoretical knowledge, such as courses about what should and should not do at work.	8 _____
This will help them perform better in the workplace.	9 _____
These efforts will fulfil the needs of the young perfectly.	10 _____

3.2 流程图

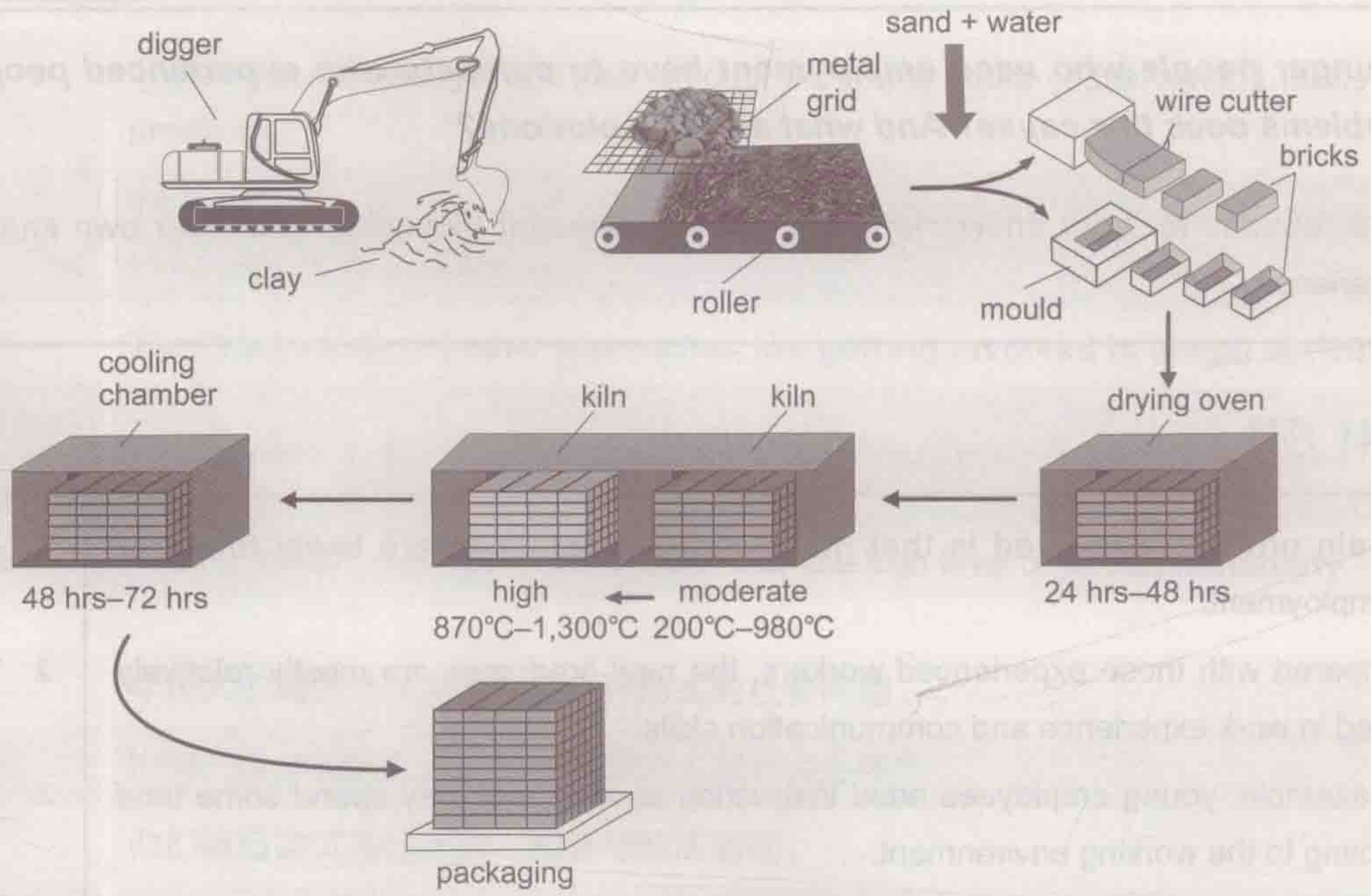
在完成流程图题写作时，需注意：

- 使用一般现在时的被动语态
- 使用时间顺序词连接流程的不同阶段
- 图中的每个流程都要描述，不可仅选取其中几个阶段
- 文章要条理清晰

请以下面的题目为例，学习时间顺序词和被动语态的用法。

The diagram illustrates the process of manufacturing bricks for the building industry.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.



开头段

The diagram shows the process of producing bricks from clay. On the whole, there are generally eight stages involved in the process, beginning from digging clay in the ground and ending with packaging.

这张图表显示了黏土制砖的过程。总体来说，这一过程大致分为八个阶段，开始于从地面挖土，结束于包装。

主体段1 前五个步骤

To begin with, clay **is dug** from the ground by a digger **and then** it **is placed** on a metal grid. Small pieces of clay which are selected by the metal grid dropped on the roller. **At the next stage**, these small pieces of clay **are mixed** with sand and water. **Following this**, bricks **are shaped** by a mould or a wire cutter **before** being moved into the drying oven for the next 24 hours to 48 hours.

首先，黏土由挖掘机从地下挖出来，然后被放在一个金属网格上，小块黏土被筛选出来，落在滚轴上。在下一阶段，这些小块黏土会与沙子和水混合。接下来，模具或线切割器使砖成型，然后砖被送入烘箱放置24小时~48小时。

主体段2 后三个步骤

After that, the bricks **are brought** into a massive kiln, going through **firstly** a moderate temperature, at around 200℃ to 980℃, and **then** into another kiln with a higher temperature, at 870℃ to 1,300℃. **Next**, they **are kept** in the cooling chamber for 48 hours to 72 hours. **Finally**, the bricks **are packaged**.

之后，砖被放入一个巨大的窑中，首先经过一个中等温度的窑，温度大约在200℃~980℃，然后进入一个更高温度的窑，温度在870℃~1,300℃。接下来，它们被保存在冷却室，放置48小时~72小时。最后，砖块会被包装好。

练习 请使用括号中单词的被动形式填空，完成下列范文的两个主体段。

主体段1 前四个步骤

The process starts with clay dug by a digger from deep under the Earth. Then it 1 _____ (put) on a metal grid to get rid of the oversized clay. The small pieces of clay 2 _____ (drop) on the roller. Then sand and water 3 _____ (add) to the clay. At the next stage, they 4 _____ (store) in moulds or cut by wire cutters to be perfectly shaped.

主体段2 后四个步骤

In the next step, the shaped bricks 5 _____ (move) into a drying oven for 24 hours to 48 hours. Following this, the bricks 6 _____ (send) to a massive kiln, where, at first, they 7 _____ (heat) at a moderate temperature of 200℃ to 980℃, then at a higher temperature of 870℃ to 1,300℃ before 8 _____ (cool) down in a cooling chamber for 48 hours to 72 hours. At the final stage, bricks 9 _____ (package).

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据中文提示，重新排列所给句子组成部分，完成句子。

1 积极反馈可以提高工作满意度，以便激励员工进一步改进他们的表现。

their performances / perfect / to further / motivates employees / positive feedback / job satisfaction / that / improve / can

2 今天的年轻人期望通过他们的劳动获得成就感。

the youth / expect to / acquire / achievement / through / a sense of / their labour / of today

3 在家办公意味着员工与办公室其他人的接触会更少。

less contact with / working from home / at the office / the employees / means / have / other people

4 健康研究人员发现，工作过度会增加患心脏病和中风的风险。

overwork / health researchers / is related to / of heart disease / have found that / a higher risk / and stroke

5 老年人在许多组织中扮演着重要的角色，这一点不应该被否定。

an important part / play / in many organisations / older people / and this / be denied / should not

6 在这样的情况下，金融危机的发生对资本市场的冲击是非常大的。

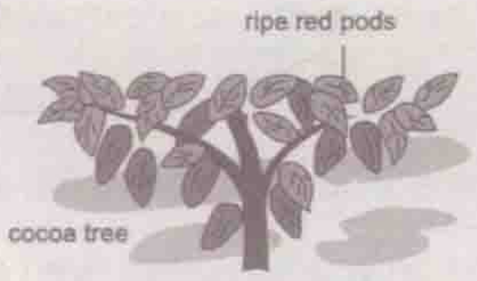
the impact of / under / financial crisis / on the capital market / such circumstances / huge / is

4.2 请根据题目，用方框中单词的被动形式填空，完成范文。

The diagram below illustrates how chocolate is produced.

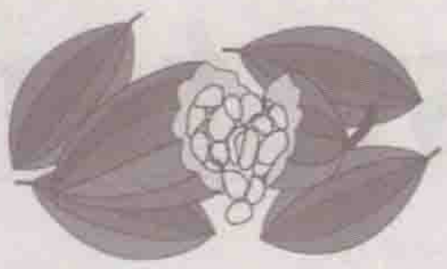
Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

1



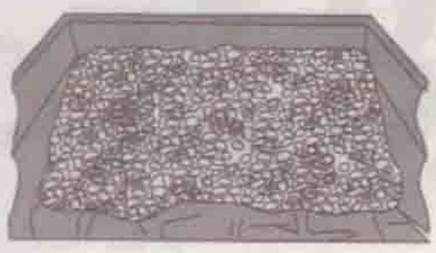
grown in South America, Africa and Indonesia

2



pods harvested, cut open to get white cocoa beans

3



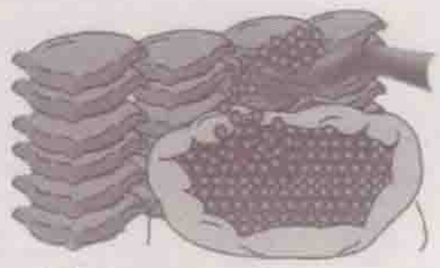
beans fermented

4



spread under the Sun to dry

5



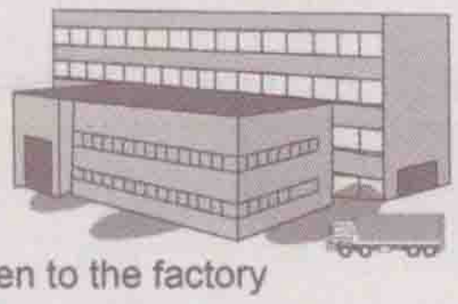
put in large sacks

6



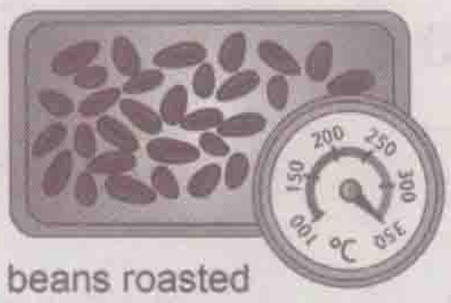
transported by trains and lorries

7



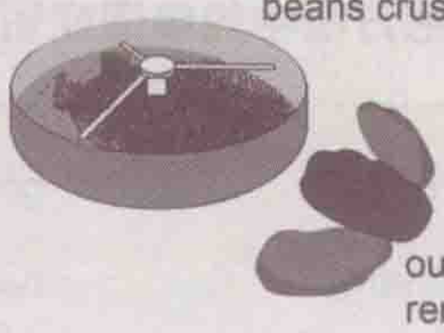
taken to the factory

8

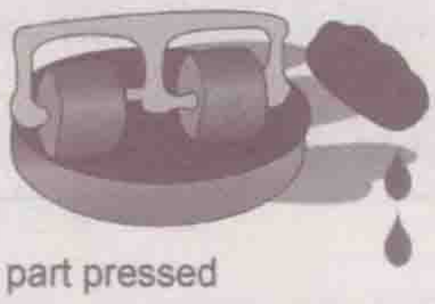


beans roasted

9



10



inner part pressed
liquid chocolate produced

grow	spread	harvest	cut	use
package	ferment	roast	crush	transport

开头段

The diagram gives information about the process of producing chocolate. On the whole, there are ten stages involved in the process, from growing cocoa trees to generating liquid chocolate.

主体段1 前五个步骤

Firstly, cocoa trees 1 _____ in South America, Africa, and Indonesia until they bear ripe red pods. At that time, the pods 2 _____ and 3 _____ open to get the white cocoa beans. After 4 _____, the beans 5 _____ in a massive tray under the Sun to dry. Following this, the cocoa beans 6 _____ in big sacks.

主体段2 后五个步骤

In the next step, those beans 7 _____ by trains and lorries to the factory. Then, they 8 _____ at a high temperature of 350℃. After that, they 9 _____ by the grinder to remove the outer shells. At the final stage, a machine 10 _____ to press the inner part of the beans and the entire process ends with producing liquid chocolate from the machine.

Unit 8 Ecosystem

Listening

1 词汇基础

1.1 请把方框中的单词或短语进行分类。

solar energy	coal	oil	wind energy
tidal energy	natural gas	nuclear energy	

Renewable energy	Non-renewable energy

1.2 请选出画线词的同义表达。

1 Plastic bags are less eco-friendly than cloth bags.

A bad for the environment　B good for the environment　C having no effect on the environment

2 Coal belongs to conventional energy.

A new　B polluted　C traditional

3 The warm air currents can help birds fly.

A the movement of air　B the temperature of air　C the quality of air

4 Solar energy can be the solution to the shortage of energy.

A of or from water　B tidal　C of or from the Sun

5 Large oil and gas reserves are found in the Middle East.

A supplies　B demands　C reuse

1.3 请先选词填空，然后听录音，确定你的答案。

electricity	vegetation	generating	spin	sailing	reverse

Today, we're going to look at wind turbines. A wind turbine works like a fan, but in 1 _____. Instead of

using electricity to make wind, like a fan, a wind turbine uses wind to make 2 _____. The wind turns the blades, which in turn 3 _____ a generator to create electricity. The patterns of wind are different across different parts of the world and influenced by many factors, including sunlight and 4 _____. People have been using wind power for 5 _____ and flying kites, as well as 6 _____ electricity.

场景词汇

alternative /ɔːl'tɜːnətɪv/ *adj.* 可替代的

conventional /kən'venʃənl/ *adj.* 传统的

potential /pə'tenʃl/ *adj.* 潜在的

eco-friendly /ˌiːkəʊ 'frendli/ *adj.* 对环境友好的

renewable /rɪ'njuːəbl/ *adj.* （能源）可再生的

non-renewable /ˌnɒn rɪ'njuːəbl/ *adj.* （能源）不可再生的

nuclear /'njuːkliə(r)/ *adj.* 核能的

solar /'səʊlə(r)/ *adj.* 太阳的

tidal /'taɪdl/ *adj.* 潮汐的

liquid /'lɪkwɪd / *n.* 液体 *adj.* 液体的

solid /'sɒlɪd/ *n.* 固体 *adj.* 固体的

steam /stiːm/ *n.* 蒸汽

sticky /'stɪki/ *adj.* 黏的

mechanical /mə'kænɪkl/ *adj.* 机械的

agriculture /'ægrɪkʌltʃə(r)/ *n.* 农业

coal /kəʊl/ *n.* 煤

substance /'sʌbstəns/ *n.* 物质

current /'kʌrənt/ *n.* （水、气、电）流

crush /krʌʃ/ *v.* 压坏

generate /'dʒenəreɪt/ *v.* 产生

reserve /rɪ'zɜːv/ *n. / v.* 储备

material /mə'tɪəriəl/ *n.* 材料

measure /'meʒə(r)/ *v.* 测量

fossil fuel 化石燃料

human activity 人类活动

natural gas 天然气

2 能力培养

2.1 了解流程图题

近年来，流程图题逐渐成为雅思听力考试题型的新趋势，几乎每次考试都会出现，一般多出现于Part 2和Part 3中。因为题型较新，所以还是有一定的难度。该题型一般会考查完成某事的步骤或流程，有时也会考使用说明书等内容，考查形式通常为两种：选择题和填空题。

2.2 解题步骤

❶ 仔细阅读题目要求，判断具体考查形式。

❷ 迅速阅读题干，画出已给图示上的关键信息，注意画出空格前后的信号词。

❸ 根据题目中空格前后的词来预测答案的语法形式（词性、单复数等），并猜测可能的答案。

4 听录音时注意起点，即从哪个步骤开始说起，然后抓住表示顺序的逻辑关系信号词，如：first，firstly，first of all，for starters，to start with，to begin with，second，until，then，previously，next，finally，lastly，after，after this等。

5 听的时候要快速、简要地记笔记，以防漏听重要信息。

6 检查答案的拼写。如果是填空题，要确定是否所有空格都已填上答案。

Tips

题目空格前后出现的关键信息在录音中通常会以同义替换的方式出现，并且很有可能会调换位置，所以听录音时不能只看着空格前的信息，忽略空格后的信息。如：题目中的a whale's ears在录音中可能会变成ears of a whale；题目中的主动句（Air pollution can cause global warming.）在录音中可能会变成被动句（Global warming can be caused by air pollution.）。因此，听录音时要注意听空格前后关键信息的同义替换，也要注意听无法被同义替换的词，如时间、地点、人名、术语等专有名词。

2.3 巩固练习

练习1 请判断以下题目的具体考查形式，然后圈出题目中的关键信息。

Complete the flow chart below.

*Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.*

The formation of fossils

The body of an ancient animal was buried by 1 _____.

↓

The bones and other hard parts became 2 _____.

↓

The 3 _____ of the animal's bones was replaced.

↓

The 4 _____ was solidified into rock.

↓

Fossilised animals began to 5 _____ in the land.

练习2 请判断以下题目的具体考查形式，然后根据要求作答。

*Choose **FIVE** answers from the box and write the correct letter, **A–F**, next to Questions 1–5.*

A cool off	B well	C surface	D spin	E earth	F river

The production of geothermal energy

Hot water is pumped from underground through a 1 _____.

↓

When water reaches the 2 _____, it will turn into steam.

↓

Steam will 3 _____ the turbine that is connected to a generator.

↓

The steam will 4 _____ and turn back to water.

↓

Water is pumped back into the 5 _____.

练习3 请将以下表达进行同义替换。

Example be used repeatedly → be used again and again

1 America's carbon footprint _____

2 bike tours _____

3 a shortage of fuels _____

4 high temperatures _____

5 Overfishing can cause the extinction of some ocean species.

_____

6 The balance of ecosystem has been broken by unregulated human activities.

_____

Tips

雅思听力中常见的同义替换包括：名词、动词、形容词和副词与其同义词或近义词之间的转换；名词所有格与of短语之间的转换；主动语态与被动语态之间的转换等。有时也会涉及不同词性之间的转换。



3 题型讲解

3.1 高频场景

能源场景在雅思听力考试中一般出现在Part 3和Part 4中，涉及的题型种类较多，有流程图题、选择题、匹配题、填空题等，难度比较大。考生需要掌握能源类的相关场景词汇，并且抓住录音中的关键信息。该场景下的高频考点包括：

- 新能源的开发
- 能源利用率
- 传统能源产生的污染
- 节能科技的发展

3.2 题型演练

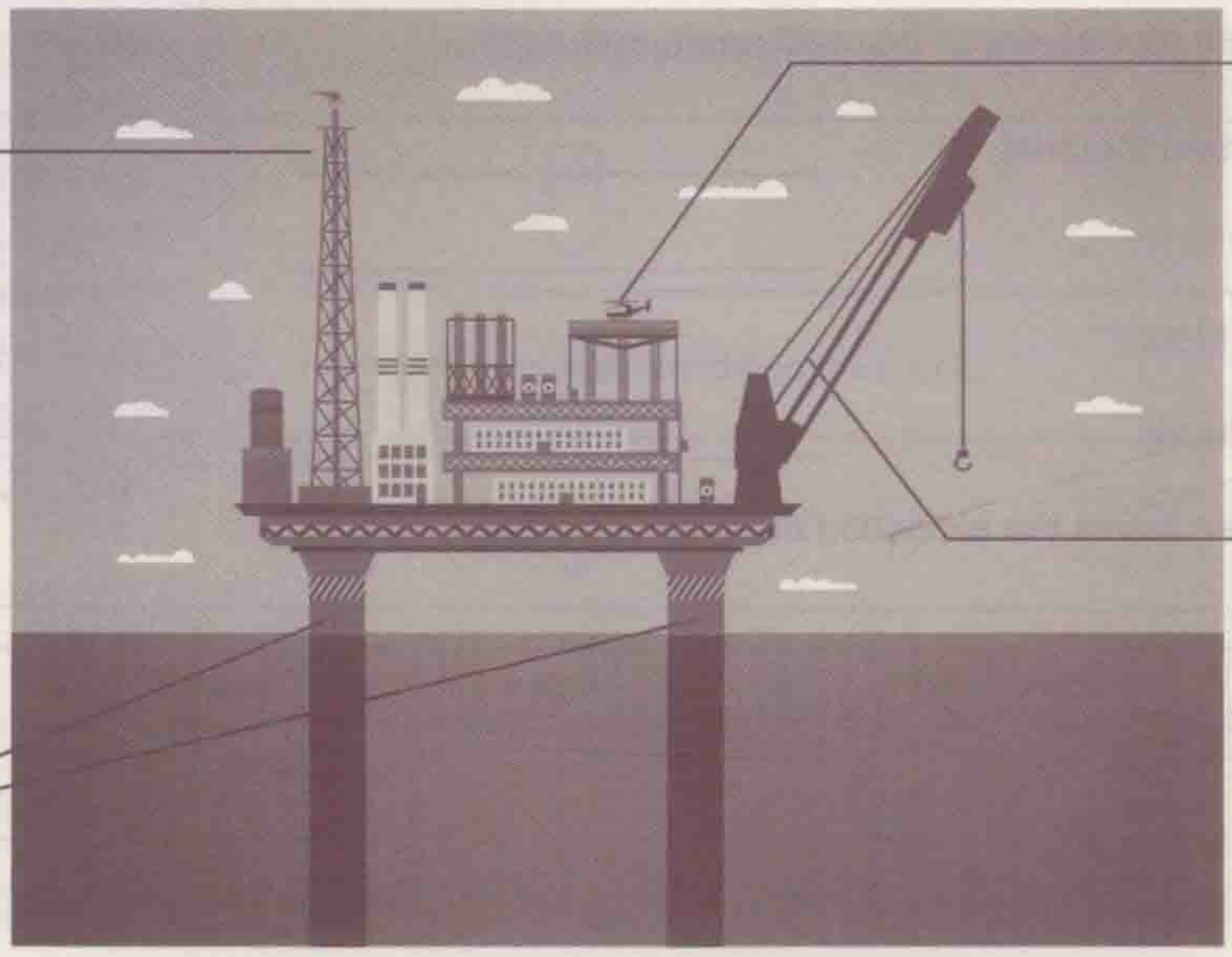
练习1 **请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。**

Label the diagram below.

*Choose **FOUR** answers from the box and write the correct letter, **A–F**, next to Questions 1–4.*

An oil platform

A helicopter　B cables　C towers　D crane　E derrick　F machine



练习2 请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。

Questions 1–6

Complete the notes below.

*Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.*

Biofuels

Biofuels can be made from 1 _____ and 2 _____.

Advantages:

The production of biofuels is 3 _____.

In America and Europe, biofuels have been applied to 4 _____.

In China, a great number of 5 _____ have used biofuels in the production process.

Biofuels are easy to 6 _____.

Questions 7–10

Complete the flow chart below.

*Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.*

Make the biomass into 7 _____.

↓

Add some 8 _____ substances when necessary.

↓

Put the product into 9 _____ to burn.

↓

Use very little energy of 10 _____.

4 课后练习

4.1 请看题目，圈出题目中的关键词。

Questions 1–3

Complete the flow chart below.

Write ***NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER*** *for each answer.*

Solar panels

The solar panels convert the Sun's energy into 1 _____.

⇩

The solar inverter converts the energy mainly for the use of 2 _____.

⇩

The leftover energy is transferred to the 3 _____.

Questions 4–10

Complete the summary below.

Write ***NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER*** *for each answer.*

There is always a device, installed in buildings and linked to the solar panels, to 4 _____ and 5 _____ the power. In summer, when there are large 6 _____ of solar energy, people can get 7 _____ by storing solar energy. Then, during 8 _____ or bad weather days, these credits can be used to meet the 9 _____ of extra electricity. Apart from that reason, the fact that the cost of solar energy has dropped by nearly 10 _____ in the last decade also contributes to the rise of solar energy demand.

4.2 请听一段录音，并按照要求完成4.1中的题目。

4.3 请再听一遍4.2的录音，写出4.1的流程图题中每个答案附近的信号词。

1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____

4.4 请再听一遍4.2的录音，并写出下列句子的原句。

1 The solar inverter converts the energy mainly for the use of home devices.

_____

2 This is very useful during summer months when there is plenty of solar energy.

_____

3 These credits can be used to get extra energy from the network during nights and bad weather days when low electricity is produced.

_____

Reading

1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择正确的单词填入相应的图片下方。

grassland	desert	forest	tundra	freshwater	marine



1 _____ ecosystem



2 _____ ecosystem



3 _____ ecosystem



4 _____ ecosystem



5 _____ ecosystem



6 _____ ecosystem

1.2 请从方框中选择合适的单词，并以其正确形式填入空白处。

blossom	breed	circulate	stretch	prey

1 The flowers in this garden are just beginning to _____.

2 The process of how oxygen _____ under the sea is complicated.

3 Many of the forest animals _____ only once per year.

4 Hawks and other carnivorous birds _____ on a variety of small animals.

5 The trees around us are _____ their top branches, forming a giant arch.

1.3 请阅读文章，从文章中选取正确的单词或短语补全笔记。

Types of Environmental Ecosystems

An ecosystem is composed of all the living and non-living things in a specific natural area. It may contain vegetation, wildlife, insects, micro-organisms, minerals, soil, water and sunlight.

Every factor in an ecosystem depends on every other factor, either directly or indirectly. Scientists divide ecosystems into two categories: terrestrial or aquatic. A terrestrial ecosystem is based on land, whereas an aquatic ecosystem is found in water. Within these two categories, forest, grassland, desert, tundra, freshwater and marine ecosystems are considered to be major types.

Forest ecosystems

A forest ecosystem is categorised in accordance with the climate, which could be tropical, temperate or boreal. In the tropical area, rainforest ecosystems are known for their humid conditions, tall lush trees and dense foliage, as well as a wide array of species inhabiting the forest floor. Rainforest ecosystems house a range of flora and fauna far in excess of any other type of ecosystem known to man. In temperate regions, forest ecosystems can be classified as deciduous, coniferous or usually a combination of the two, where some trees lose their leaves during autumn, while others remain green throughout the year. In the far north, just south of the Arctic, boreal forests — also known as taiga — are characterised by a large number of coniferous trees.

Grassland ecosystems

Grassland ecosystems are located in prairies, savannas and steppes. They are generally found in tropical or temperate parts of the world, though it is not unusual for them to be found in colder regions like Siberian steppe. One of the main features of grasslands is that they are semi-arid, which means they are often dry. There are few trees, but you are likely to come across flowers interspersed with the grasses. Grasslands are commonly used by farmers to feed livestock.

Desert ecosystems

Deserts are dry places where rainfall is rare and tends to be below 25 centimetres per year. While they may be arid, not all deserts are hot. Such ecosystems can be found in regions from the tropics to the Arctic. No matter where you come across a desert, it is likely to be windy. Some deserts contain sand dunes, while others feature mostly rock. Vegetation is in short supply and, in some cases, nonexistent, while animals and insects, as well as reptiles and birds, must be well adapted to the dry conditions.

Tundra ecosystems

Ecosystems in the tundra are not dissimilar to deserts as they are also dry. Most tundra regions are covered in frost all year round, but during the short spring and summer, shallow ponds are formed by melting snow and attract migrating birds. The kinds of flowers visible in tundra regions include lichens and other small flowers. The term 'tundra' mostly refers to polar areas, but at lower latitudes, areas resembling tundra referred to as alpine tundra can be found at high elevations.

Freshwater ecosystems

Freshwater ecosystems appear in streams, rivers, springs, ponds, lakes, bogs and freshwater swamps. They are subdivided into two separate categories: water which is almost stationary, like ponds, and water which flows, like creeks. In addition to fish, algae, plankton, insects, amphibians and underwater plants all make their habitats in freshwater areas.

Marine ecosystems

Marine ecosystems contain salt water, which distinguishes them from freshwater ecosystems. Usually, they are able to support a far greater variety of species than freshwater ecosystems. Marine ecosystems are the most abundant types of ecosystems in the world. They consist of not only the ocean floor and surface but also tidal zones, estuaries, salt marshes and saltwater swamps, mangroves and coral reefs.

Types of Environmental Ecosystems

- Forest ecosystems

  Forest ecosystems can fall into categories as the rainforest in 1 _____ areas, the deciduous forest, the coniferous forest or a combination of the two in temperate areas, and the boreal forest in the far north.

- Grassland ecosystems

  Grassland ecosystems can be usually found in various tropical or temperate areas, although, in some cases, they can be found in colder regions like 2 _____.

- Desert ecosystems

  Desert ecosystems feature either sand dunes or 3 _____.

- Tundra ecosystems

  Frost and shallow 4 _____ appear in tundra ecosystems with the seasonal change.

- Freshwater ecosystems

  Freshwater ecosystems can be divided into 5 _____ water and flowing water.

- Marine ecosystems

  Marine ecosystems consist of all kinds of water environments ranging from the ocean floor to tidal zones, but 6 _____ is what defines them.

1.4 请列出文中介绍的六种生态系统，并将它们的中文意思写在旁边。

_____

_____

主题词汇

tundra /'tʌndrə/ *n.* 冻原，苔原
marine /mə'ri:n/ *adj.* 海洋的
saline /'seɪlaɪn/ *adj.* 含盐的
dune /dju:n/ *n.* 沙丘
Arctic /'ɑ:ktɪk/ *adj.* 北极的
Antarctic /æn'tɑ:ktɪk/ *adj.* 南极的
abyss /ə'bɪs/ *n.* 深渊
canopy /'kænəpi/ *n.* 树冠层
layer /'leɪə(r)/ *n.* 层；层次
twig /twɪg/ *n.* 细枝
blossom /'blɒsəm/ *v.* 开花
photosynthesis /ˌfəʊtəʊ'sɪnθəsɪs/ *n.* 光合作用
sunlit /'sʌnlɪt/ *adj.* 阳光照耀的
reproduce /ˌri:prə'dju:s/ *v.* 繁衍
offspring /'ɒfsprɪŋ/ *n.* 后代
fatal /'feɪtl/ *adj.* 致命的
sneak /sni:k/ *v.* 偷偷地走，潜行
prey /preɪ/ *v.* 捕食 *n.* 猎物
predator /'predətə(r)/ *n.* 捕食性动物

2 能力培养

文章逻辑结构分析（一）

在阅读文章时，有时会遇到这种情况：我们认识句子中的每个单词，对句子的成分也大致了解，但将句子放在整个段落中时，却很难完全理解它的意思。究其原因，很可能是我们对于句中或者句间的逻辑关系缺乏认识。在本单元，我们将学习文章中两种常见的逻辑关系——转折关系和对比与比较关系。

1 转折关系。文章中的转折关系指前一句表达某种含义，后一句表达与其相反的含义。使用转折通常是为了突出强调转折后的内容，因此，无论是在句子还是段落中，转折后的内容往往更为关键。常见的转折信号词包括although，though，even though，but，however，even if，while，despite，in spite of，nevertheless，nonetheless等。

2 对比与比较关系。文章中的对比与比较通常涉及两个或两个以上的对象，通过描述不同对象之间的差异帮助读者对所描述的对象形成更为清晰、直观的认识。在对比与比较关系中，不同对象在重要程度方面并没有显著的区别，关键在于厘清它们的相同点和不同点。常见的对比与比较信号词包括on the other hand，on the contrary，in contrast，as...as...，以及形容词和副词的比较级和最高级等。

Tips

某些单词可能隐含对比与比较的关系，例如动词exceed，surpass，lack等；形容词different，similar，unique，parallel等。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

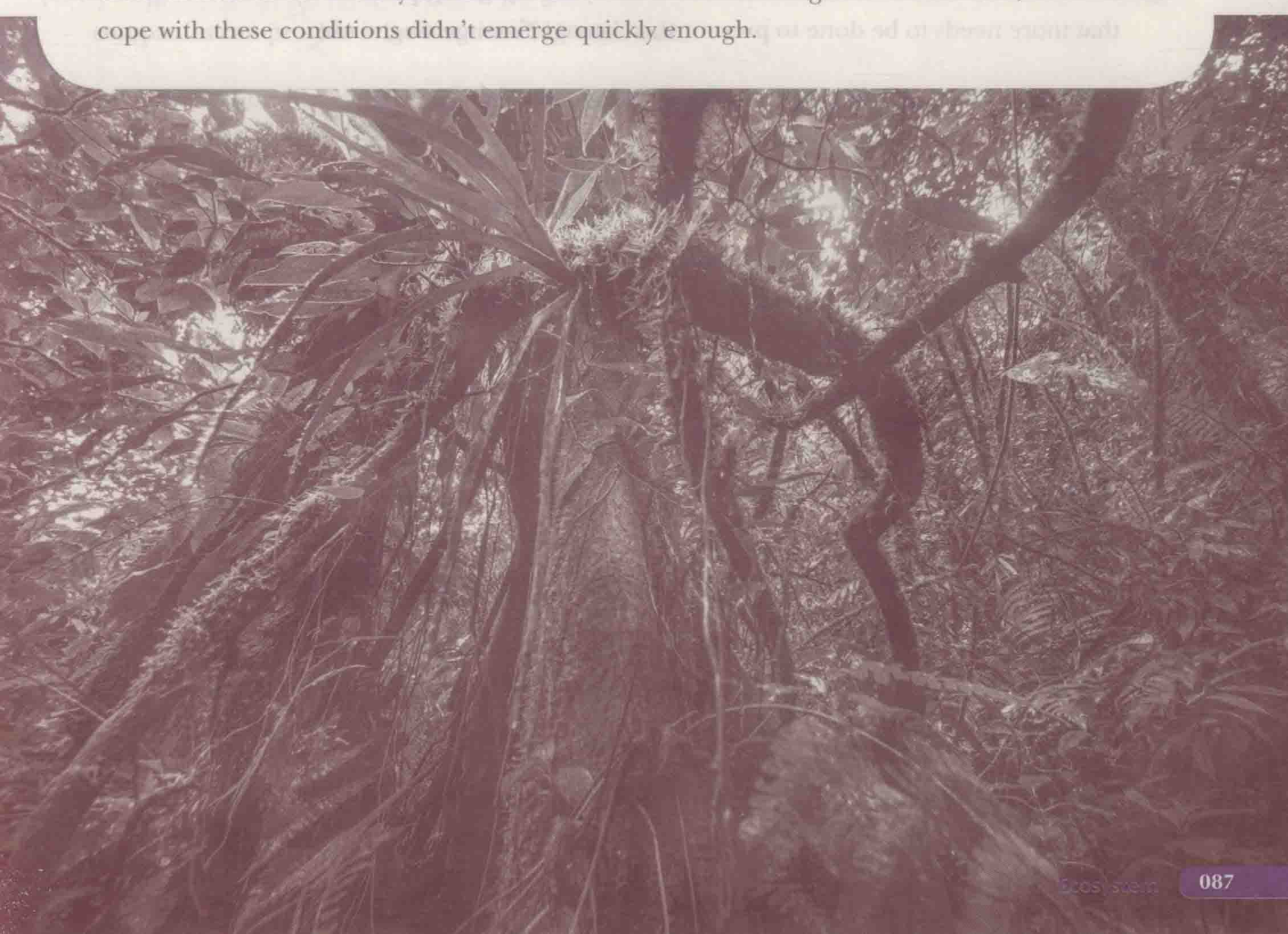
Large Areas of Amazon Rainforest Dying as Trees Fail to Keep Up with Climate Change

One of the greatest threats facing forests today is drought, as vast parts of them are killed off and new trees don't emerge quickly enough to replace them.

Vast sections of major rainforests can no longer be sustained by current climatic conditions due to the increased global temperatures, a study has found. Scientists looking at decades of growth in sections of the rainforest discovered that climate change was responsible for a changing tree composition. As some trees die during their natural cycles, new trees are unable to emerge.

As global temperatures rise, there will inevitably be some 'losers' that cannot survive in new conditions, but there will also be 'winners'. Trees able to survive in dry, arid conditions have a better chance of thriving than those that require wet conditions.

According to the research led by Dr Adriane Esquivel Muelbert, the Amazon rainforest is 'lagging behind the rate of climate change'. The data indicates that the droughts that affected the Amazon over the last decades had damaging consequences for the structure of the forest. Trees unable to survive dry conditions died out at an alarming rate. In contrast, those able to cope with these conditions didn't emerge quickly enough.



The Amazon rainforest is one of the world's most vital ecosystems, as 45 per cent of all tropical forests and 40 per cent of all carbon kept in land vegetation are stored there. However, as more and more trees are cut down to make way for cattle-grazing land, the problem facing the Amazon becomes more acute.

More alarmingly, even the parts of the Amazon that haven't been victimised by deforestation are also suffering, and the Amazon Forest Inventory Network has been established to map the rainforest's response to the changing climate. The network consists of more than 100 plots from across the region, which are constantly monitored by scientists.

Based on statistics from the 1980s, Dr Muelbert's team discovered that higher levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere had a positive effect on larger trees, enabling them to grow faster. It was also discovered that 'pioneer trees' emerged very quickly, as they had also benefited from a boost in carbon dioxide.

However, as deforestation made vast swathes of the Amazon unsuitable for certain types of trees, the researchers claimed that the findings indicated a serious need to protect sections of the rainforest that have not yet fallen victim to this trend. 'The impact of climate change on forest communities has important consequences for rainforest biodiversity,' said Dr Kyle Dexter, an ecologist at the University of Edinburgh who participated in the research. Species most likely to be harmed by droughts are at greater risk of extinction, as they inhabit parts of the Amazon that are inclined to be affected by the on-going process. It is clear from the study that more needs to be done to prevent this damage from getting worse.

1 请画出文中表示转折和对比与比较的信号词。

2 下列句子中，信号词前后的内容哪个更为重要？请说明你的理由。

1) As global temperatures rise, there will inevitably be some 'losers' that cannot survive in new conditions, but there will also be 'winners'.

2) Trees unable to survive dry conditions died out at an alarming rate. In contrast, those able to cope with these conditions didn't emerge quickly enough.

3 请思考转折信号词在文中的作用。

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Renewable Energy vs Fossil Fuels

While many people know fossil fuels are yesterday's news, they don't know too much about why renewable energy is evolving at a rapid pace while fossil fuels are decreasing in numbers. Below is a neat explanation.

The difference between the two is straightforward. Renewable energy is energy that can be

produced from natural resources like solar, wind, hydro, geothermal, and biomass power, which can be replenished within a human's life time. Fossil fuels, on the other hand, like gas, coal and oil, take millions of years to evolve underground.

Currently, the world is still heavily dependent on fossil fuels. The energy industry uses huge amounts of natural gas and will go to great lengths to extract it. Natural gas is the most consumed energy source, with 34% of the US households relying on it, as opposed to 30% relying on coal. Next is nuclear power taking up 20%, followed by oil accounting for only 1%. Only 15% of the energy currently comes from renewables.

Renewables are growing in popularity, despite our seeming addiction to fossil fuels. In 2016, renewable energy generation in the US grew to a record 22 gigawatts of capacity, which far outstripped the use of fossil fuels. Wind power is a major renewable resource in Texas, as it generates almost three times the megawatt capacity of any other part of the US. It also boasts a state-of-the-art grid that enables wind-generated electricity to be harnessed efficiently. Despite its oil reserves, Texas is leading the way in a major shift towards a renewable future.

It is often said that renewables are so expensive that we need to continue using fossil fuels for economic reasons, but this is not true. Solar power, for example, can be far cheaper than the power produced by coal. Moreover, renewable energy is expected to become cheaper over time. It won't be long before the power produced by solar panels is everywhere. Renewable-energy credits can enable you to go green at a reasonable price today, and some energy companies can provide it for less than $10 a month.

Industrialisation has caused dramatic changes to the Earth's climate, with rising sea levels as a result. Fossil fuels are responsible for this, as they release dangerous levels of pollutants into the atmosphere. Anyone who disputes the facts about climate change just has to take a look at the skyline of any major city on a heavily polluted morning. Renewable energy, on the other hand, typically emits less CO_2 than fossil fuels. Indeed, renewable sources like solar and wind power hardly emit any CO_2 at all, though there is a slight discharge during the maintenance and construction periods. If we are going to reduce the impact of global warming and keep our air clean, using more renewable energy might be the best way. The economic arguments in defence of fossil fuels no longer hold water, as all the evidence indicates that over a long period of time, renewables are the cheaper option.

1 请画出文中表示对比与比较的信号词。

2 请找出下列句子中的转折信号词，并画出作者想要强调的信息。

1) Despite its oil reserves, Texas is leading the way in a major shift towards a renewable future.

2) It is often said that renewables are so expensive that we need to continue using fossil fuels for economic reasons, but this is not true.

3 请根据文章内容，判断作者更支持使用哪一种能源，并总结出作者的三点理由。

Type of energy: _____

Reason 1 _____

Reason 2 _____

Reason 3 _____

3 题型讲解

小标题匹配题（一）

小标题匹配题是雅思阅读考试中一种题目出现在阅读文章之前的题型。选项以一个方框的形式出现，方框中有多个小标题，其中包含文章各个段落的标题，要求考生为每个段落匹配一个合适的小标题。小标题匹配题不仅考查考生对于全文的整体把握，还考查考生总结和提炼段落信息的能力，因此属于较难的题型。近年来，小标题匹配题的出题频率在不断增加。

解答小标题匹配题时，应首先画出所有小标题中的关键词，以便在阅读文章的过程中找出那些包含明显的同义替换的段落，之后再利用排除法对相关的小标题进行仔细筛选。如果某个小标题中的两个或两个以上的关键词均未在某段出现，即可断定该段与这个小标题不匹配，排除该选项。

Tips

需要注意的是，方框中的选项数量通常多于需要匹配的段落数量，因此排除干扰项也是小标题匹配题的难点之一。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

1 What does Paragraph A mainly talk about?

A the centrality of grazing animals in ecosystems

B the importance of grazing animals to the countryside landscape

C multiple functions of grazing animals

D a comparison between herbivores and carnivores

2 The passage below has five paragraphs, **A**–**E**.

Choose the correct heading for Paragraphs B–E from the list of headings below.

List of headings

i The emphasis and direction of Dangal et al's study

ii The prospect of relevant studies on grazing animals

iii Comparison of the energy consumption between herbivores and carnivores

iv An overview of the existing research on grazing animals

v The predator's effect on herbivorous animals

vi Impacts that environmental factors have on grazing animals

1) Paragraph B
2) Paragraph C
3) Paragraph D
4) Paragraph E

Critical Roles of Grazing Animals in an Ecosystem

A There is a certain rural charm of observing cattle, sheep, horses, and goats roaming in a field. However, these animals not only provide a good scene for photos; they also play an important role in ecosystems on both small and large scales. Grazing herbivores is critical to the health and survival of the Earth. It also has an influence on plant health and productivity, biodiversity and species composition, nutrient cycling, and many other things. In addition, grazing reduces the amount of sunlight reflected back into the atmosphere due to the higher albedo grass has compared to bare soil.

B These are reasons why grazing animals is important. Conversely, climate and other natural factors such as topography, soil composition, and access to food, water, and shelter can affect the health and survival of these animals.

C The impacts of grazing herbivores on ecosystems have been widely overlooked during the past several decades. Current studies are generally limited to the selection of species like cows or sheep. But in one study, Dangal et al integrated grazing herbivores into a global model: the third-generation Dynamic Land Ecosystem Model (DLEM).

D While there is more research to be done, this study is a good start in the right direction. Rather than focusing on wild animals, the study looks closely at grazing domesticated animals. It examined these animals' ability to reproduce and survive in relation to climate, food and water availability, and other environmental factors. In addition to these factors, the scientists also observed the effects these animals have on nitrogen, carbon, water cycles, and soil health. The results of this study can be used to enhance the knowledge of animal population dynamics in global land biosphere models and lead to groundbreaking changes.

E Carbon dioxide and methane exchanges between the Earth and the atmosphere are directly influenced by grazing herbivores. This study shows the need for continuing research about the role these animals play in their local and global environments.

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The passage below has six paragraphs, **A**–**F**.

Choose the correct heading for each paragraph from the list of headings below.

List of headings

i	The main features of the coral
ii	What are coral reef ecosystems
iii	The merits of coral reef ecosystems
iv	Instances of coral reef damage and the response from scientists
v	The aesthetic value of coral reefs
vi	The threats to coral reef ecosystems
vii	The value of coral reef ecosystems to the living organisms
viii	The best environment for coral reef ecosystems to develop
ix	Different types of coral reefs in the deep sea

1 Paragraph **A**

2 Paragraph **B**

3 Paragraph **C**

4 Paragraph **D**

5 Paragraph **E**

6 Paragraph **F**

Coral Reef Ecosystems

A Coral reefs are some of the planet's most diverse ecosystems. Coral polyps, the creatures mainly responsible for constructing reefs, can take many forms: large reef-building colonies, graceful flowing fans, and even tiny, individual organisms. Within these reefs, there are huge numbers of coral species, with some inhabiting warm, shallow, tropical seas and others in the cold, dark depths of the ocean.

B Due to the sheer abundance of life in coral, coral reefs have been called the 'rainforests of the sea' by some people. Around a quarter of the ocean's fish are reliant on coral reefs for subsistence. Fish and other marine life shelter, find food, reproduce, and rear their young in the deep recesses of the ocean's coral. The coral reefs to the northwest of Hawaii are part of the Papahānaumokuākea Marine National Monument, offering an example of a large number of different species inhabiting these areas. This part of the ocean is home to over 7,000 species of fish, invertebrates, plants, birds, and other types of marine life. Deep-water reefs or mounds, which are less prominent in the popular imagination, support a wide variety of sea life in a comparatively infertile environment.

C Shallow-water, reef-building coral has a symbiotic relationship with photosynthetic algae called zooxanthellae, which live in their tissues. The coral provides a safe environment and the compounds zooxanthellae need for photosynthesis. This then causes them to produce other nutrients, such as carbohydrates, which are necessary for the survival of coral. The purpose of the algae is to help coral dispose of waste. The term used to describe the relationship here is mutualism. Deep-sea coral lives in deeper and colder parts of the ocean and consequently doesn't have access to zooxanthellae. Unlike the coral living in shallow waters where the main form of sustenance is photosynthesis, deep-sea coral consumes plankton and organic matter to satisfy its energy requirements.

D One of the main benefits of coral reefs is that they are environmentally friendly, as they can protect coastlines from destruction, as well as offering people a pleasant place for leisure. They are also a source of food and health products. More than half a billion people rely on reefs for sustenance, livelihood, and protection. Fishing, diving, and snorkelling on and near reefs contribute vast amounts of money to the local economy. The net economic value of the world's coral reefs is thought to be around tens of billions of US dollars each year. Additionally, these ecosystems have enormous cultural significance for indigenous people.

E Unfortunately, coral reef ecosystems are dying out all over the world, due to a combination of natural and man-made threats. Natural threats include diseases, predators, and storms, while man-made threats encompass things like pollution, sedimentation, unsustainable fishing practices, and climate change. Climate change, in particular, is having a detrimental effect, with rising ocean temperatures leading to ocean acidification. The main problems caused by these threats are the stress placed on coral, which can cause it to either bleach or die, while other threats lead to physical damage.

F During the 2014-2017 coral bleaching event, unusually warm waters caused by extreme weather patterns had a severe impact on 70% of the world's coral reef ecosystems. The Great Barrier Reef in Australia was particularly badly affected, as hundreds of miles of coral was bleached. It is possible for coral reefs to recover from bleaching, though it can take many years for the ecosystems to fully repair themselves. In some cases, bleaching was so severe that the coral simply died. Scientists have developed innovative ways to support coral reef ecosystems, like growing coral in a nursery and then transplanting it to areas that have been badly damaged.

4 课后练习

请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The passage below has five paragraphs, **A**–**E**.

Choose the correct heading for each paragraph from the list of headings below.

List of headings

- **i** The general process of how energy flows in an ecosystem
- **ii** The creatures that consume other living organisms
- **iii** The definition of an ecosystem
- **iv** The role of producers in an ecosystem
- **v** The final stage of energy transformation in an ecosystem
- **vi** The most efficient mode of energy circulation in nature
- **vii** Human's interference with the flow of energy in the ecosystem

1 Paragraph **A**

2 Paragraph **B**

3 Paragraph **C**

4 Paragraph **D**

5 Paragraph **E**

The Energy Cycle in an Ecosystem

A The 'ecosystem' is a term used to denote an environment in which living species, as well as non-living elements, live, reproduce and interact. For example, a lake, a swamp, a coral reef, a forest, or a prairie would each be an example of an ecosystem. Ecosystems can vary in terms of overall size and specific characteristics. There's a big difference between ecosystems in the desert and ecosystems in the colder, Arctic regions. Nonetheless, all ecosystems function in a similar way, as they all exhibit a continuous flow of energy into, through, and out of them through the energy cycle.

B Energy moves in and out of ecosystems through a complex network of interactions. The energy that arrives in the ecosystem travels through the various agents within it. For example, the energy that comes from the Sun travels through plants, micro-organisms, and animals within the ecosystem. The end of an energy cycle is decomposition, and then the process starts again. Basically, the flow of energy through the energy cycle is determined by the food chain within the ecosystem. Much of the energy that travels through the cycle, however, is ultimately lost as heat.

C Autotrophs are the species in an ecosystem that produce. An 'autotroph' is something that feeds itself and mainly consists of plants, algae, and some bacteria. This process usually occurs through photosynthesis whereby producers take energy from the Sun, and combine it with water and carbon dioxide to create carbohydrates. The carbohydrates then combine with other molecules to form the basic structure of a plant. In addition, it is also possible for some autotrophs to produce carbohydrates by using chemical or heat energy instead of solar energy.

D Heterotrophs are consumer species in an ecosystem. They are determined by the types of food they consume, which may include plants, animals, fungi, bacteria, or an assortment of organisms. Herbivores, animals that subsist solely on plants, are primary consumers. Meat-eating animals, on the other hand, are referred to as carnivores, or secondary or tertiary consumers. An animal that consumes both plants and animals is known as an omnivore. Energy flows through heterotrophs regardless of their types, as they produce waste and eventually die.

E The ultimate endpoint of any energy cycle in an ecosystem is decomposition when the organism begins to break down. Types of bacteria, worms, insects, fungi, and even mould can all act as decomposers. The decomposition process involves converting organic matter, usually the waste or remains of autotrophs and heterotrophs, into inorganic matter. This decomposed matter is then used by autotrophs to feed themselves. It is important to note that matter isn't the same as energy. Decomposers produce heat energy during the decomposition process, which is why compost piles feel warm. This is how all of the energy that enters the ecosystem ultimately leaves — through heat.

Speaking

1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择正确的单词填入相应的图片下方。

forest	waterfall	cliff	river	island	mountain



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____



6 _____

1.2 请分别描述方框中的自然景观，可参考示例。

volcano	undersea world	polar region

Example Perhaps the most famous jungle around the world is the Amazon rainforest located in northern South America. The Amazon rainforest is a wonderful place which is full of unique animals and plants. It is said that the jungle enjoys the richest biodiversity worldwide, containing several million species.

2 能力培养

2.1 语法训练——定语从句

❶ 限制性定语从句

限制性定语从句用于修饰和限制先行词，与先行词关系密切，表示“……的人或物”。如果去掉限制性定语从句，整个句子的含义会受影响。限制性定语从句一般由关系代词或关系副词引导。常用的关系代词有who，whom，whose，that，which等；常用的关系副词有when，where，why等。

- The park has a variety of plants **that can make us feel relaxed**.
  那个公园有各种各样能使我们感到放松的植物。
- It's important to know the local weather conditions for those **who plan to protect the wildlife habitat**.
  对于那些计划保护野生动物栖息地的人来说，了解当地的天气情况是很重要的。
- There came a day **when the rain fell in torrents**. 有一天下起了倾盆大雨。
- Potatoes can be grown in places **where it is too dry to grow rice**.
  马铃薯可以种植在那些因过于干旱而无法种植水稻的地区。
- The reason **why the volcano has been so active recently** remains unclear.
  这座火山近期如此活跃的原因仍不明确。

需要注意的是，在限制性定语从句中，当关系代词在从句中作宾语时，绝大多数情况下，关系代词都可以省略。在某些情况下，关系副词where也可以省略。

- Everything **(that) I have planted in my whole life** has grown well finally.
  我这辈子种过的所有东西最后都长得不错。
- This is a kind of plant **(which) I have never seen before**.
  这是一种我以前从来没有见过的植物。
- The man **(who / whom) we met at the meeting** is an expert on planting crops.
  我们在会议上遇到的那位男士是种庄稼的能手。
- Pine trees are the place **(where) squirrels can find a lot of pine cones**.
  松树是松鼠可以找到很多松果的地方。

❷ 非限制性定语从句

非限制性定语从句起补充说明的作用，通常用逗号将它与句子的其他部分隔开，去掉这类从句不会影响句子的含义。关系代词that和关系副词why通常不引导非限制性定语从句。在译成中文时，这类从句多译成一个并列句。

- His garden is full of different plants and is vibrant throughout the year, **which makes him very proud**.
  他的花园里种满了各类植物，而且一年四季都生机勃勃，这使他非常自豪。
- Sara, **who had been working all day**, suggested going out to enjoy the sunlight.
  萨拉一整天都在工作，她建议出去享受阳光。
- Summer is a boiling season, **when people are reluctant to study or work**.
  在酷热的夏季，人们都不愿意学习或工作。
- This is an area of swamp, **where there are many alligators**.
  这是一个沼泽地区，这里有很多鳄鱼。

❸ 其他定语从句

as也可以用作关系代词，引导定语从句。

- We have such fruit **as you have never seen**.
  我们有你从来没见过的水果。
- They felt such heat in the jungle **as they had never felt before**.
  在丛林中，他们感受到了从未感受过的炎热。
- What I've experienced in the natural reserve is such an experience **as nobody else ever had**.

我在自然保护区里的体验是其他任何人都没有过的。

练习1 请将下列两个句子合并为一个含有定语从句的句子。

1 Her daughters send her potted plants as gifts every year.

Both of her daughters work as botanists.

---

2 The plant survived.

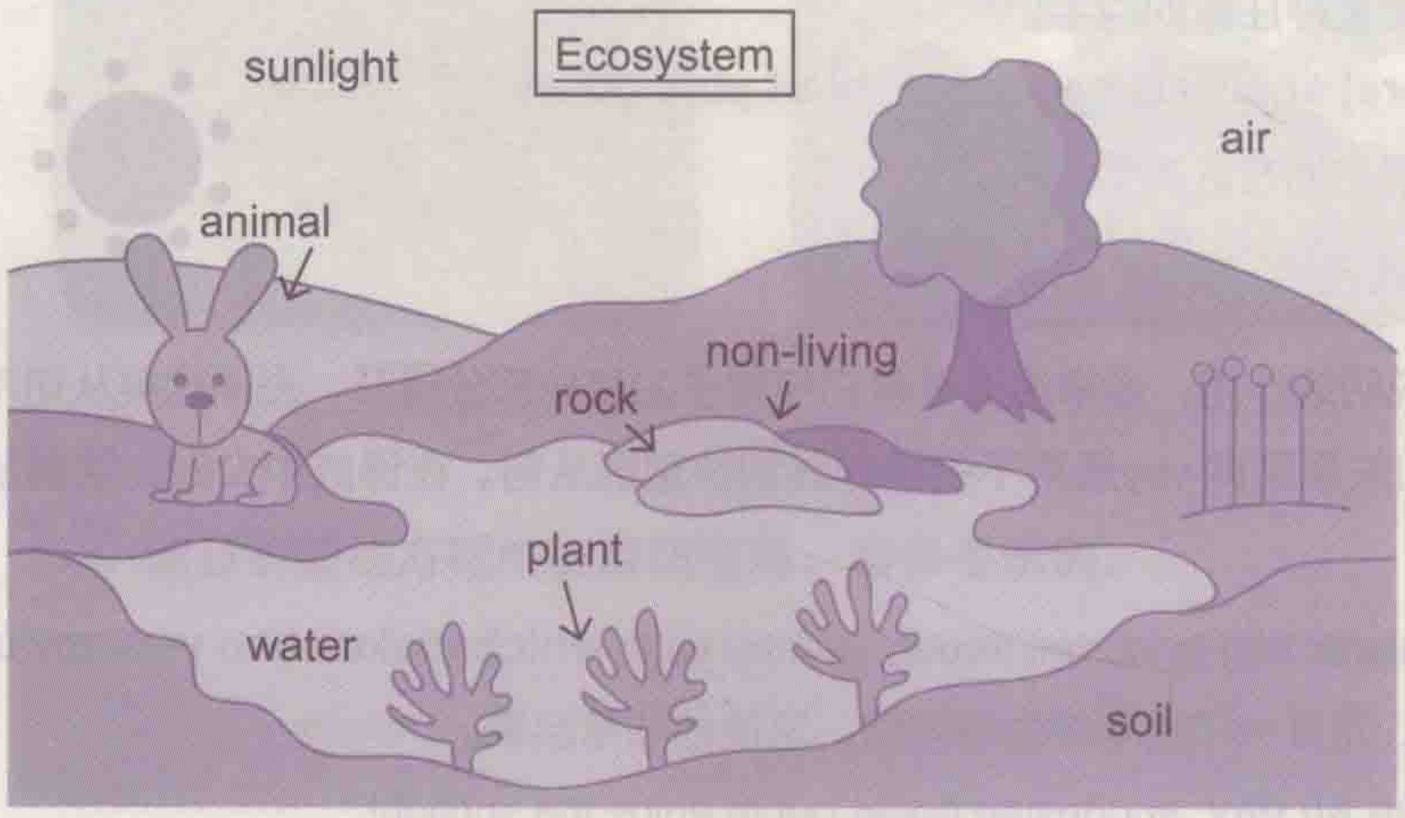
I watered the plant once a week.

---

3 These kinds of flowers are not so common in the south.

In the south, the rainy season lasts longer.

练习2 请用已学词汇和语法描述下列图片。



Example

Everything in the ecosystem is interrelated with one another...

2.2 发音训练——句子的重音

句子的重音指的是人们在朗读连贯的语句时哪些词要重读、哪些词不重读的规则。

请听录音，跟读以下例句，通过模仿纠正自己的发音。

一般来说，句中需要重读的词包括名词、实义动词、数词、形容词、副词及部分代词；在句子中不重读的词包括冠词、介词、连词等。

'My 'preferred 'plant 'is the 'orchid. 我偏爱的植物是兰花。

'There 'is a 'big 'lawn in the 'centre of the 'garden. 在花园的中央有一大片草坪。

The 'red 'peony 'means 'dignity and 'privilege in 'Chinese 'culture.

红色的牡丹花在中国文化中象征着尊贵和庄严。

需要特别强调或突出的词语，无论是实词还是虚词，都要重读。

I 'didn't 'know the 'flowers were 'dying. 我不知道花朵要凋谢了。

He 'said the 'government 'should do something to 'improve the 'quality of the 'local 'soil.

他说政府应该采取措施来改善当地土壤的质量。

I 'saw with my 'own 'eyes that the 'grapes were 'in the 'greenhouse.

我亲眼看见葡萄在温室里。

疑问代词、指示代词和不定代词一般要重读。

'Which animal runs fastest? 哪种动物跑得最快?

'This is why we should learn more about the ecosystem. 这就是我们要更了解生态系统的原因。

This is 'all I can tell you about the Yangtze River. 这就是我能告诉你的有关长江的全部。

在句末的be动词和助动词一般要重读。

How long can a snake 'be? 一条蛇能有多长?

I wonder where the biggest grassland in China 'is. 我想知道中国最大的草原在哪里。

—Do you like water lilies? 你喜欢睡莲吗?

—Yes, I 'do. 是的，我喜欢。

be动词或助动词与not结合在一起时一般要重读。

'Isn't it lovely? 难道它不可爱吗?

I 'don't have green fingers. 我不擅长园艺。

'Wouldn't it be nice if we could plant trees together? 如果我们能一起植树，那不是很好吗?

某些形容词、副词或动词可以不重读。

Good morning!（Good可不重读）早上好!

I often water flowers three times a week.（often可不重读）我经常一周浇三次花。

My favourite animal is giant panda.（is可不重读）我最喜欢的动物是大熊猫。

一个英语句子根据不同的表达意向可以有不同的重读读法。

I like sunny days. 我喜欢有阳光的日子。

当重读I时，强调的是“我”而不是别人;

当重读like时，强调“喜欢”而不是不喜欢;

当重读sunny时，强调我喜欢的是“有阳光的”日子而不是其他天气的日子;

当重读days时，强调我喜欢的对象是“日子”而非其他。

3 话题讲解

3.1 雅思口语Part 1——植物类



植物类话题的难度比较高，可以尝试将话题范围缩小到家里养的盆栽、花卉等。



也就是说，平时就要注意积累一些与植物相关的词汇。

对。在谈到家中的植物时，可以详细描述我们是如何播种、浇水和施肥的。



还有一个有趣的话题可以聊，那就是在不同的国家，某种植物可能有不同的寓意。因此，我们在把带有吉祥寓意的植物作为礼物赠予来自不同文化背景的朋友时，有可能因为文化差异而引发乌龙事件。

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

- Do you keep plants at home? [Why / Why not?]
- What plant did you grow when you were young?
- What do you know about growing a plant?
- Why do people like to keep plants in their houses?

话题表达

herb /hɜːb/ *n.* 药草

brush /brʌʃ/ *n.* 灌木丛

green fingers 园艺技能

water the plant 给植物浇水

start a garden 开辟一个花园

green spaces 绿化区

house plant 室内植物

relieve work stress 缓解工作压力

I'm looking forward to... 我期待着……

I don't have the patience to... 我没有耐心……

The only plant that has ever survived in...was... 在……里唯一存活下来的植物是……

We have a proper climate to plant... 我们有适宜的气候种植……

I enjoy the gardening work which... 我喜欢……的园艺工作。

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

Nowadays, most people live in small flats, so there are not many green spaces. The balcony is the only place for us to grow herbs or small house plants. I am still a green hand in balcony planting for the moment,

although I know how to plant seedlings, water them and fertilise them. Anyway, different plants need different levels of care, so I always read the instructions very carefully before planting them.

3.2 雅思口语Part 2——自然类

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

Describe your favourite season.

You should say:

what the season is

what the weather is usually like during this season

what you can do during this season

and explain how the season influences your feelings.

思路解析与拓展



雅思口语Part 2的自然类话题中，贴近日常生活的季节和天气话题经常出现。



是啊。可以尝试归纳总结四季的特点，对个人最喜欢的季节进行描述。要注重细节描绘，比如气候或天气的特征、树木和花朵在颜色和形态上的变化等。



由此可以再展开谈一谈在这个季节人们喜欢和不喜欢的活动。



最后再说一说这个季节给个人带来的感受等。

话题表达

humid /'hju:mɪd/ *adj.* 潮湿的

moderate /'mɒdərət/ *adj.* 温和的

fertile /'fɜ:taɪl/ *adj.* 肥沃的

typhoon /taɪ'fu:n/ *n.* 台风

hurricane /'hʌrɪkən/ *n.* 飓风

tornado /tɔ:'neɪdəʊ/ *n.* 龙卷风

extreme weather condition 极端天气情况

weather forecast 天气预报

get flooded 被淹没

be reluctant to do something 不情愿做某事

It's a pleasant / horrible time of the year because... 这是一年中令人愉快／极为讨厌的时候，因为……

When autumn shows up... 当秋天来临时……

It's spectacular to see... 看到……真是太壮观了。

I'm more productive when the weather... 当天气……时，我做事更有效率。

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

My favourite season has to be autumn. It's the most pleasant time of the year when the weather is mild without any extreme weather condition, and everyone is relieved when summer is finally over.

In hot summer days, people are reluctant to leave their air-conditioned houses to go out shopping or go to the park. However, when autumn shows up, the weather becomes cool. Meanwhile, leaves turn red or yellow and look really spectacular with those stunning shades. I enjoy hiking in the forests near my hometown.

Chinese poets tend to describe autumn as a season that could easily arouse people's feeling of homesickness. Therefore, Mid-autumn Festival is a time when Chinese people get together to eat mooncakes and appreciate the bright full moon.

Autumn is also a time of harvest. I am more productive in autumn, especially in the morning. It's the most lovely season as far as I'm concerned.

4 课后练习

4.1 请划掉下列句子中错误的单词或短语，并朗读正确的句子。

1 Tianjin is one of my favourite cities. It has absolutely great nature / views / scenery and magnificent buildings there.

2 Flowing / Running / Leading right through the centre of the city, the river enjoys a growing popularity, with many people sitting and having picnics by the side / in the middle / on the bank of the river at the weekend.

4.2 请回答以下问题。

- Do you think plants can be given as gifts?
- Is it popular for people to grow their own fruit and vegetables in China?
- Describe a thing you did that is good for the environment.

  You should say:

  what it was

  when you did it

  how you did it

  and explain why you did that thing and what result it led to.

- Describe your ideas about snow.

  You should say:

  when you saw snow fall for the first time in your life

  what it was like to first experience snow

  whether it usually snows in your place in winter

  and explain how snow influences people's life.

Writing

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据中文提示，拼写出下列单词。

1 能源 e_e_g_　2 自然的 n_t_r_l　3 人口 po_ul_ _io_

4 稀缺的 s_a_c_　5 可循环的 r_ _y_la_le　6 污染 p_l_ _tion

7 垃圾 r_b_i_h　8 气候 c_ _m_t_

1.2 请使用1.1中的单词填空，完成句子。

1 People should be encouraged to buy _____ goods.

2 We need to work together to find ways to mitigate _____ change.

3 In some countries, people sort _____ into different bags before throwing it away.

4 We should do everything we can to prevent air _____.

5 Feeding a growing _____ is a major challenge facing the world.

6 Alternative sources of _____ are urgently needed.

2 能力培养

2.1 词汇表达

❶ 核心单词及其派生词

核心单词	派生词
protect /prə'tekt/ *v.* 保护	protection /prə'tekʃn/ *n.* 保护
conserve /kən'sɜːv/ *v.* 保护	conservation /ˌkɒnsə'veɪʃn/ *n.* 保护
sustain /sə'steɪn/ *v.* 维持	sustainable /sə'steɪnəbl/ *adj.* 可持续的
degrade /dɪ'greɪd/ *v.* 使恶化	degradation /ˌdegrə'deɪʃn/ *n.* 退化
dispose /dɪ'spəʊz/ *v.* 处理	disposable /dɪ'spəʊzəbl/ *adj.* 一次性的
environment /ɪn'vaɪrənmənt/ *n.* 环境	environmental /ɪnˌvaɪrən'mentl/ *adj.* 环境的
pollute /pə'luːt/ *v.* 污染	pollution /pə'luːʃn/ *n.* 污染
disaster /dɪ'zɑːstə(r)/ *n.* 灾难	disastrous /dɪ'zɑːstrəs/ *adj.* 灾难性的
endanger /ɪn'deɪndʒə(r)/ *v.* 危及	endangered /ɪn'deɪndʒəd/ *adj.* 濒临灭绝的
deforest /ˌdiː'fɒrɪst/ *v.* 砍伐森林	deforestation /ˌdiːˌfɒrɪ'steɪʃn/ *n.* 砍伐森林
recycle /ˌriː'saɪkl/ *v.* 回收利用	recyclable /ˌriː'saɪkləbl/ *adj.* 可回收利用的

❷ 常用短语

chemical substance 化学物质

chronic disease 慢性病

commercial interests 商业利益

reduce carbon emissions 减少碳排放

domestic sewage 家庭污水

fatal disease 致命的疾病

over-consume natural resources 过度消耗自然资源

a shortage of natural resources 自然资源短缺

waste generation 废物产生

waste disposal 废物处理

acid rain 酸雨

water contamination 水污染

land degradation 土地退化

valuable agricultural land 宝贵的农业用地

ozone depletion 臭氧消耗

drinking water 饮用水

loss of habitats 栖息地的丧失

tropical rainforest 热带雨林

throwaway / disposable products 一次性产品

energy conservation 节约能源

invest in alternative energy 投资可替代能源

stabilise energy prices 稳定能源价格

promote environment-friendly products 推广环境友好型产品

reduce reliance on fossil fuels 减少对化石燃料的依赖

waste sorting / garbage classification 垃圾分类

❸ 句型及例句

For the reasons stated above, it can be concluded that... 综上所述，可以得出结论……

- **For the reasons stated above, it can be concluded that** a diverse and affordable clean energy source should be developed.
  综上所述，可以得出结论：应该开发一种多样化的、人们能买得起的清洁能源。

...put a number of species under threat. ……使一些物种受到威胁。

- Consistently expanding space for human activities will **put a number of species under threat**.
  不断扩大人类活动空间将使一些物种受到威胁。

advocate long-term sustainable development worldwide 在世界范围内提倡长期的可持续发展

- The aim of many international conferences on environment is to **advocate long-term sustainable development worldwide**.
  许多国际环境会议的目的是在世界范围内提倡长期的可持续发展。

relax one's mind and body 放松身心

- The beautiful scenery in nature could help us **relax our mind and body**.
  大自然的美丽景色有助于我们放松身心。

练习 **请从方框中选择适合的表达填空，完成句子。**

toxic chemical substance	drinking water	tropical rainforests
disposable products	stabilise energy prices	carbon emissions

1 Developing renewable energy can help _____ in the future.

2 Industrial waste water contains _____, which could cause great damage to the environment.

3 Environmentalists believed that _____ should be banned.

4 It is illegal to cut down _____ for agricultural or industrial crops.

5 In order to reduce _____, individuals should take public transport, instead of driving private cars, for daily commuting.

6 If this situation continues, _____ would soon become an endangered resource.

2.2 语法重点

there be 句型

在there be 句型中，主语之后可以接多种成分。

接介词短语作状语

- There is a bird **on the tree**. 树上有一只鸟。
- There is a connection **between wealth and hard work**. 财富和努力工作之间有联系。

接动词不定式作后置定语，表示将要发生的事或目的

- There are many measures **to be taken** to save energy.
  要采取许多措施来节约能源。（动词不定式表示将要发生的事）
- There is an urgent need **to develop** sustainable energy at present.
  当前迫切需要开发可持续能源。（动词不定式表示目的）

接过去分词作后置定语，表示被动关系或完成的状态

- There is a large amount of industrial waste **dumped** into this river.
  大量工业废料被倾倒在这条河里。（过去分词表示被动关系）
- There are many results **achieved** in developing renewable energy.
  开发可再生能源取得了许多成果。（过去分词表示完成的状态）

接现在分词作后置定语，表示主动关系或正在进行的状态

- There are many mountains **surrounding** this little village.
  这个小村庄周围环绕着很多大山。（现在分词表示主动关系）
- There are many animals **living** in this forest.
  这个森林里生活着许多动物。（现在分词表示正在进行的状态）

接定语从句，对主语起修饰作用

- There are many things **(that) individuals can do for environmental protection**.
  每个人都可以为环境保护做很多事情。
- There are many rules and regulations **which have been established by the government to solve the environmental problems**. 政府已经建立了许多解决环境问题的规章制度。

接同位语从句，对主语进行解释说明，从句与主语是同位语的关系

- There is no doubt **that we need to develop alternative energy**.
  毫无疑问，我们需要开发可替代能源。
- There are appeals from environmentalists **that we should stop over-consuming natural resources**.
  环保人士呼吁我们应该停止过度消耗自然资源。

练习 请根据提示，使用there be句型翻译下列句子。

1 住宅区（living quarter）的旁边有一个森林公园（forest park）。

2 有许多疾病是由环境退化（environmental degradation）引起的。

3 有许多活动呼吁（call for）保护自然资源（natural resources）。

4 提高公众的环保意识是当务之急（an urgent need）。

5 一些国家对控制碳排放（control carbon emissions）有严格的规定（strict regulations）。

2.3 衔接方式

❶ as a matter of fact

意为“事实上，实际上”，通常用在句首，其后用逗号隔开，用于强调所要引出的内容。

- **As a matter of fact**, every individual can make an effort to protect the environment.
  事实上，每个人都可以为保护环境出一份力。

❷ overall

意为“总之”，通常用在句首，其后用逗号隔开，用于总结性陈述。

- **Overall**, increasing oil prices is not an effective way to solve the increasingly serious traffic problems.
  总之，提高油价并不是解决日益严重的交通问题的有效方法。

❸ in short

意为“总之，简而言之”，用于总结性陈述，一般用于句首，其后用逗号隔开。

- **In short**, effective measures should be taken to address the problem of toxic pollution.
  简而言之，应该采取有效的措施来解决有毒物质污染的问题。

❹ to sum up

意为“总之”，用于总结性陈述，一般用于句首，其后用逗号隔开。

- **To sum up**, the government and enterprises should work together to protect the marine environment.
  总之，政府和企业应该共同努力来保护海洋环境。

❺ in conclusion

意为“总之”，用于总结性陈述，一般用于句首，其后用逗号隔开。

- **In conclusion**, reducing reliance on fossil fuels and developing renewable energy are effective measures to control carbon emissions. 总之，减少对化石燃料的依赖和开发可再生能源是控制碳排放的有效措施。

❻ to conclude

意为“总之”，用于总结性陈述，一般用于句首，其后用逗号隔开。

- **To conclude**, I believe that the advantages of nuclear energy outweigh its disadvantages.
  总之，我认为核能的优点大于缺点。

练习 请为下列写作题目选出适合的结论句，有的题目可选两个选项。

A As a matter of fact, the rising oil prices will have a disastrous effect on the global economy.

B Overall, customers and producers should be encouraged to shift their preference from disposable products to recyclable goods.

C In short, I agree that the noise in cities could cause mental problems and should be controlled.

D To sum up, as we are faced with the increasing demand for energy, developing alternative energy like nuclear energy would be helpful.

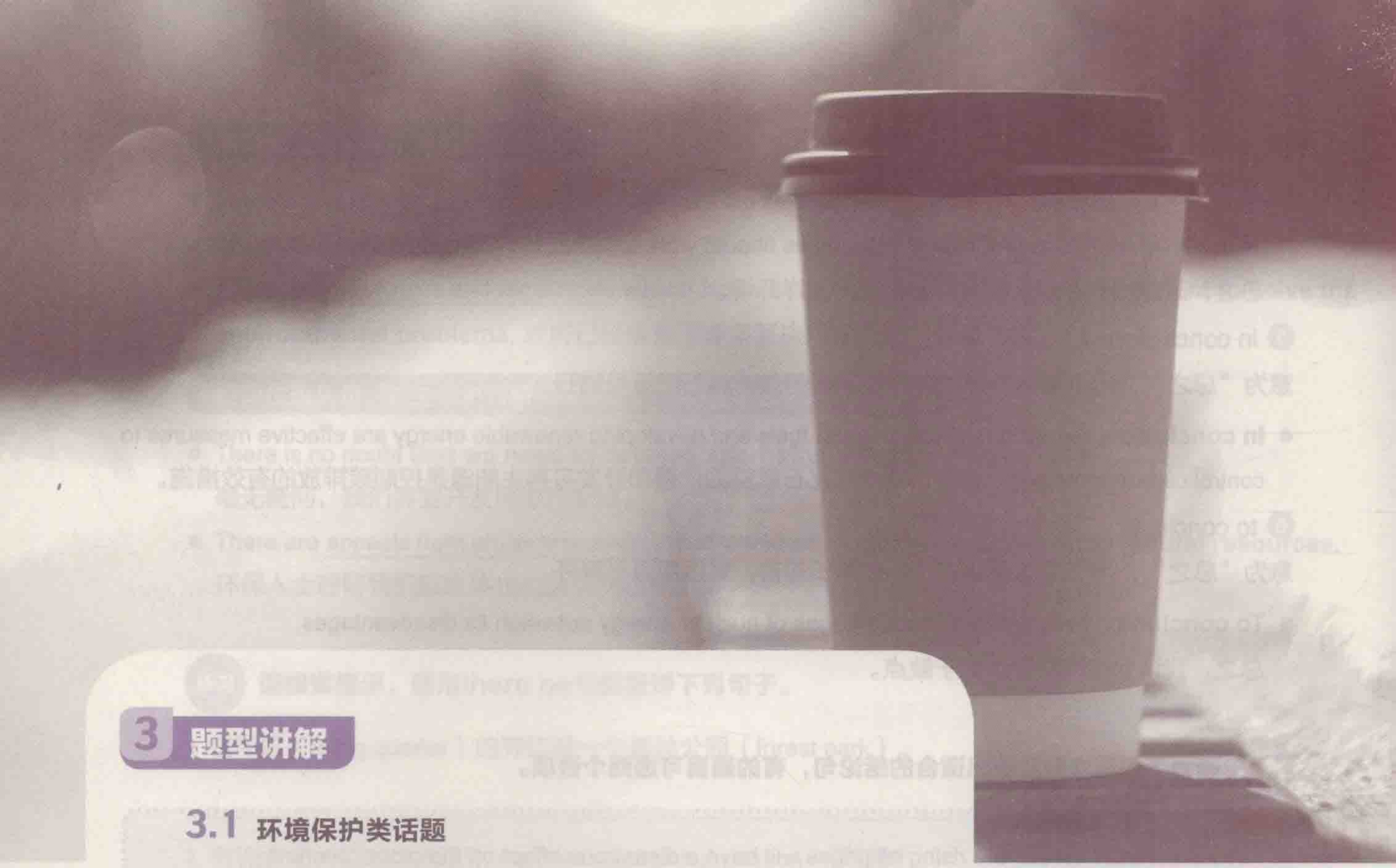
E In conclusion, although nuclear energy is dangerous to some degree, it helps to reduce the carbon dioxide emissions when used to generate electricity.

1 Nuclear energy is the best energy source for the future. Do you agree or disagree? _____

2 Nowadays we are producing more and more rubbish. What should we, as customers and producers, do to help reduce the amount of rubbish produced? _____

3 Some people think the noise people make should be controlled strictly, while others say that people are free to make as much noise as they wish. Discuss both views and give your opinion. _____

4 Increasing oil prices is the best solution to the global economic problems. To what extent do you agree or disagree? _____



3 题型讲解

3.1 环境保护类话题

雅思写作大作文的主体段通常包含以下几个部分：

idea	观点
explanation	解释观点
further explanation / example	进一步解释或举例
detail / result of the example	细节或举例的结果
additional information	补充信息
transition	转折
comparison	对比
conclusion	结论

Tips

在雅思写作大作文的主体段中，“观点”“解释观点”“结论”是必备项。同时，主体段也可能包括“进一步解释或举例”“细节或举例的结果”“补充信息”“转折”“对比”等内容，但不是必备项，且出现顺序可以根据实际情况灵活调整。

请以下面的题目为例，学习大作文主体段的写作。

Today, in many countries people are living in a 'throwaway society' where things are used for a short time and thrown away. What do you think are the causes of it and what may it lead to?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

❶ 考题分析

该题目属于“原因 + 影响”类题型。中心话题为：当前人们不对产品多次利用的现象。写作时要分析该现象产生的原因，并阐述可能造成的影响。

❷ 段落组织

主体段1 原因

idea	Clearly, **the production and consumption model**, which is now adopted by almost **all countries across the globe**, may be the one to get the blame.
explanation	For convenience, people get used to **buying disposable products** and throwing them into **rubbish bins** after using them only once.
further explanation	Meanwhile, the pleasure of shopping and the desire of **following the fashion** motivate customers to buy more stuff endlessly.
additional information	In order to **meet customers' demand**, products are designed with more emphasis on the latest fashion trend instead of their service life.
conclusion	This production and consumption model leads to today's **throwaway society**.

观点	显然，这可能要归咎于目前几乎全球所有国家都在采用的生产和消费模式。
解释观点	为了方便，人们习惯于购买一次性产品，使用一次后就扔进垃圾桶。
进一步解释	与此同时，购物的乐趣和赶时髦的欲望刺激消费者不断购买更多产品。
补充信息	为了满足消费者的需求，产品的设计更注重最新的时尚潮流而不是产品的使用寿命。
结论	这种生产和消费模式造就了今天这个一次性物品充斥的社会。

主体段2 影响

idea	This model **brings a great burden to** the environment and thus, **exerts a harmful effect on** our health.
explanation	In the process of production, considerable energy resources are consumed and huge amounts of waste are created.
further explanation	In order to dispose of the rubbish, more energy is needed, which means more **depletion of the natural resources**.
additional information	Apparently, acute environmental problems will follow and they would damage our health.
conclusion	Therefore, it can be seen that this forms **a vicious circle**.

观点	这种模式给环境带来了巨大的负担，并因此对我们的健康产生了有害的影响。
解释观点	在生产过程中，我们消耗了大量的能源资源，并制造了大量的废料。
进一步解释	为了处理这些垃圾，我们需要投入更多的能源，这意味着损耗更多的自然资源。
补充信息	显然，严重的环境问题将随之而来，它们会损害我们的健康。
结论	由此可见，这形成了一个恶性循环。

练习 **请根据题目，判断所给范文的两个主体段中句子的作用。**

In many countries, there is not enough recycling of waste materials (eg paper, glass, cans). What are the reasons and solutions?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

主体段1 原因

It is clear that people haven't realised the importance of recycling of waste materials.	1 _____
Voluntary recycling schemes and government-driven initiatives have only taken a small step in dealing with this problem.	2 _____
There are not enough incentives offered to get more individuals involved in this environmental protection programme.	3 _____
In addition, recycling requires time and effort and may become a burden for citizens.	4 _____
Therefore, it is essential to raise people's awareness of recycling.	5 _____

主体段2 措施

Many governments now have introduced legislation to force individuals and companies to comply with recycling schemes.	6 _____
Rules and regulations are great tools to help people strengthen the awareness of recycling.	7 _____
In large-scale programmes, the government can prevent companies dumping toxic waste into the waterways.	8 _____
For those who break such regulations, financial penalties, restrictions on trading and, in some more serious cases, prison sentences can be applied.	9 _____
Tough measures from governments are the only way to address this problem.	10 _____

3.2 地图

地图题写作通常由以下三个部分构成：

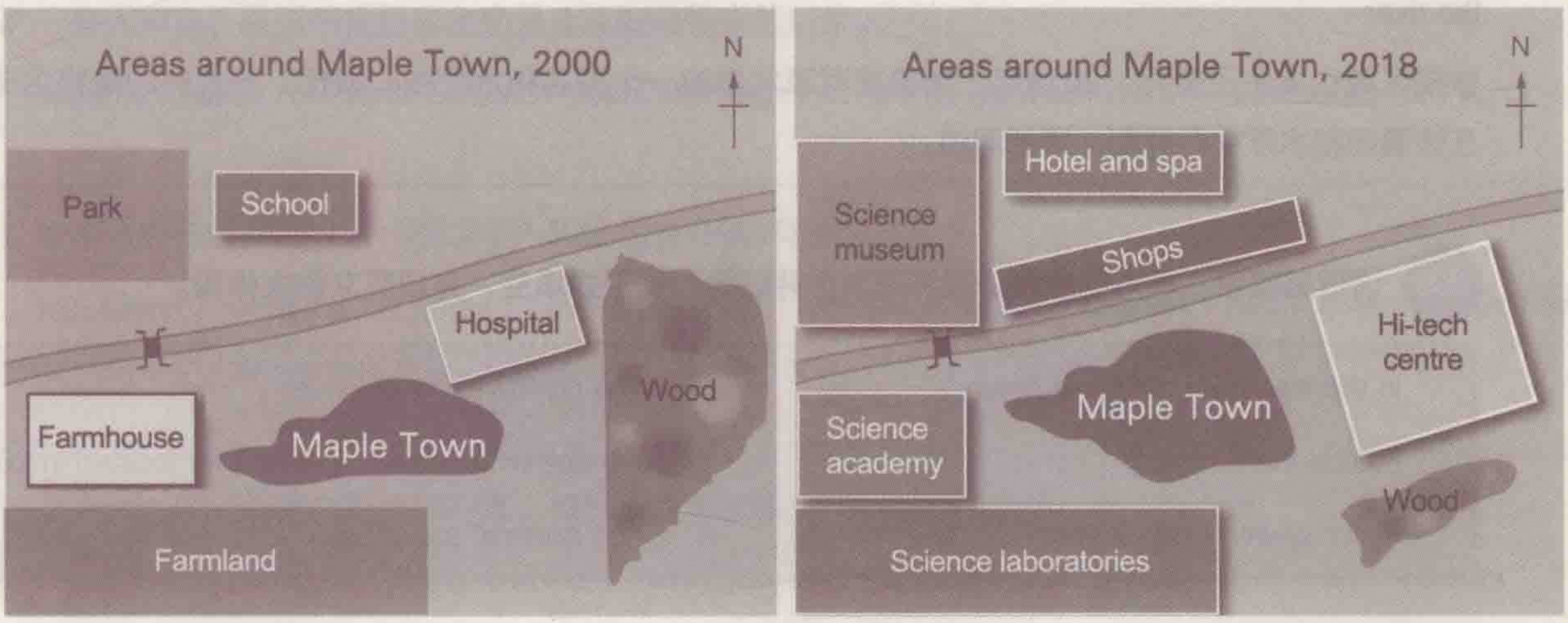
- 改写题目，介绍地图内容（1个句子）。
- 写综述，描述地图的总体情况（1~2个句子）。
- 对比地图，选取需要解释的主要变化，并将其分类叙述（至少2个段落）。

注意：在地图题写作中要正确使用地点方位词。

请以下面的题目为例，学习地图题写作的段落组织方式。

The maps below show the transformation of the areas around Maple Town between 2000 and 2018.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.



❶ 主体段可以有以下几种分段方式：

	按特征分段	按位置分段	按时间分段
主体段1	新科技教育区域	河的一侧	2000年
主体段2	休闲娱乐区域	河的另一侧	2018年

❷ 范文示例

开头段（内容介绍 + 概述）

The maps show the changes of the districts around Maple Town from 2000 to 2018. It is noticeable that Maple Town expanded greatly during this period, and more modern facilities were built in its surrounding areas.

地图显示了从2000年到2018年间枫叶镇周边地区的变化情况。值得注意的是，在这期间，枫叶镇的面积大幅扩大，周边地区修建了更多的现代化设施。

主体段1 新科技教育区域

More specifically, several buildings for science and high technology **appeared** in 2018. There used to be a farmhouse and a stretch of farmland in the southwest of Maple Town in 2000. Eighteen years later, they **were replaced by** a science academy and some science laboratories respectively. Besides, the park in 2000 **was occupied to make way for** a science museum in 2018. In addition, the hospital in 2000 **disappeared**, and the wood **shrank** to a small area which was far away from the riverbank. A hi-tech centre was built between the wood and the riverbank.

更具体地说，2018年出现了几座科技大楼。2000年，枫叶镇的西南边是农舍和农田。18年后，它们分别被科学院和科学实验室取代。此外，2000年的公园在2018年被改造成科学博物馆。而且，2000年的医院消失了，树林缩小成了一块远离河岸的小区域。在树林和河岸之间建起了一个高科技中心。

主体段2 休闲娱乐区域

There have also been changes in the area of the school. In 2018, the school **was supplanted by** a hotel and spa in the north of the river. A new shopping area appeared in front of the hotel and spa, fairly close to the river.

学校区域也发生了变化。2018年，学校被河流北岸的一个酒店和水疗中心取代。一片新的购物区域出现在该酒店和水疗中心前面，紧邻河边。

练习 请根据题目，从方框中选择适合的表达并以其正确形式填空，完成范文的主体段。

in the west part of Maple Town	in the northwest of the river
beside the river	the place where the farmland was located in 2000
in the south of the river	to the north of the shops

主体段1 河的一侧

1 _____, the park in 2000 was replaced by a science museum in 2018. At the same time, a row of shops appeared 2 _____. The school in 2000 was supplanted by a hotel and spa, which stood 3 _____.

主体段2 河的另一侧

4 _____, Maple Town expanded and occupied the area of the hospital. The wood was reduced largely to a small area, giving way to a high-tech centre in 2018. 5 _____, the farmhouse was removed to make way for a science academy in 2018. Meanwhile, 6 _____ was developed into science laboratories.

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据中文提示，将所给英文表达重新排序，组成一个语义完整的句子。

1 自然资源的有限性有可能在未来几十年内导致重大能源危机。

a major energy crisis / of natural resources / within / the finite nature / will probably lead to / the next few decades

_____

2 经济发展不应依赖于对自然资源的大规模开发。

the large-scale exploitation of / rely upon / the economic development / natural resources / should not

3 过度使用能源只会导致进一步的环境破坏。

only lead to / environmental damage / overusing energy / will / further

4 一些人声称，极端气候频繁出现是全球变暖带来的后果。

extreme weather / of / some contend / global warming / that / the frequent occurrence / a consequence / is / of

5 许多政府已经开始立法，要求个人和公司遵守循环利用计划。

legislation / recycling schemes / have introduced / individuals and companies / many governments / to comply with / to request

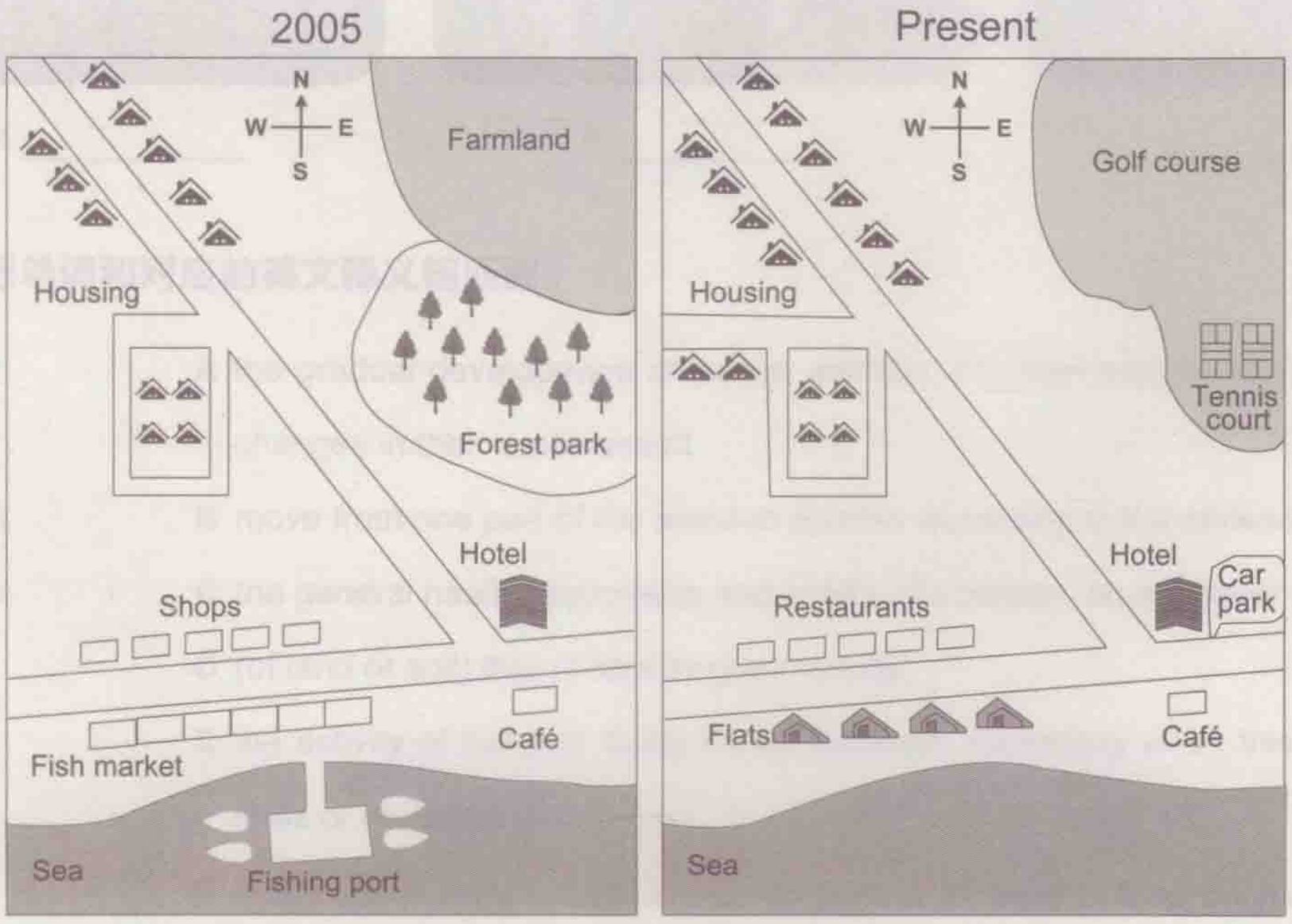
6 在中国，政府将颁布严格的政策，确保房主将垃圾分类。

in China / homeowners / the government / strict policies / to ensure / their garbage / will enact / classify

4.2 请根据题目，从方框中选择适合的英文表达并以其正确形式填空，完成短文。

The maps below show the development of a seaside village from 2005 to the present.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.



in the northeast part of the city	to the right of the hotel	expanded greatly
not much difference	along the coast	disappeared entirely
was removed to make way for	remained unchanged	

开头段

The maps give information about the changes of a seaside village from 2005 to the present. Obviously, the village has developed significantly during this period, expanding its living quarter and adding spaces for services and entertainments.

主体段1 北边

From 2005 to the present, the housing area has 1 _____ and covered the whole area of the northwest of the city. Besides, 2 _____, the farmland became a golf course and the forest park 3 _____ a tennis court.

主体段2 南边

In the southwest of the village, the shops were redesigned into restaurants. 4 _____, the fish market was turned into flats. In addition, the fishing port 5 _____ over this period. In comparison, there is 6 _____ in the southeast area. The hotel and the café 7 _____ at their original locations. Only a new car park was added 8 _____.

Unit 9 Wildlife

Listening

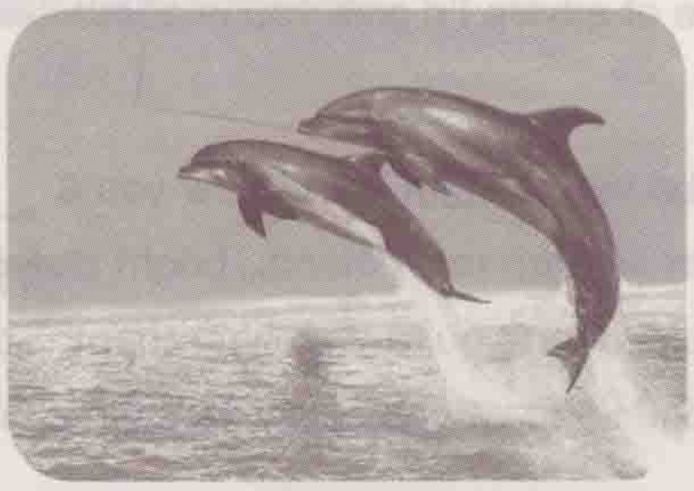
1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择适合的单词填写到对应的图片下方。

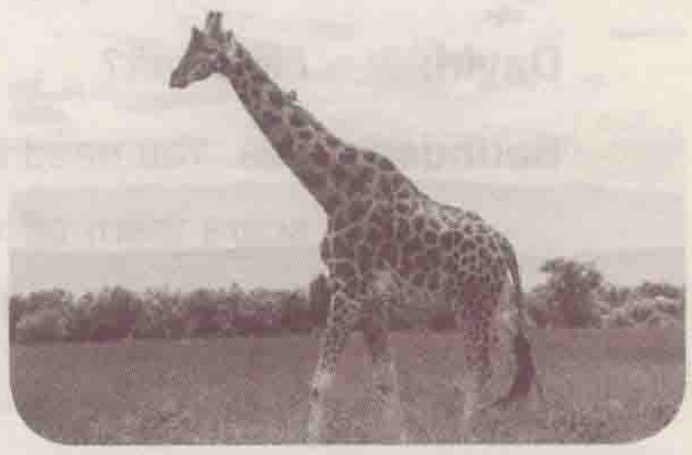
peacock　　chimpanzee　　whale　　dolphin　　lion　　giraffe



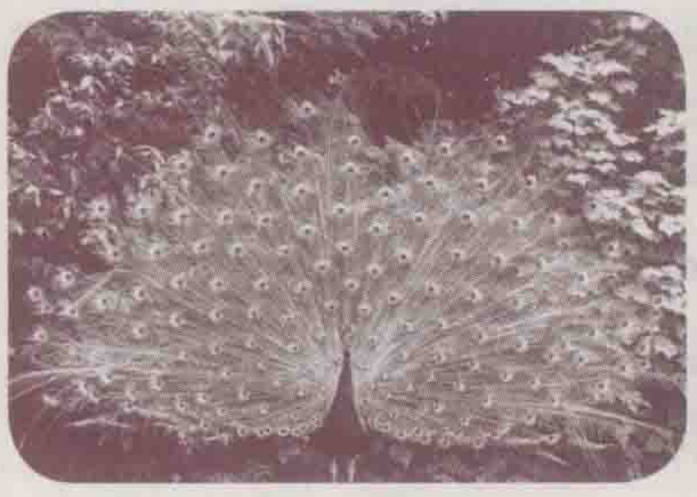
1 _____



2 _____



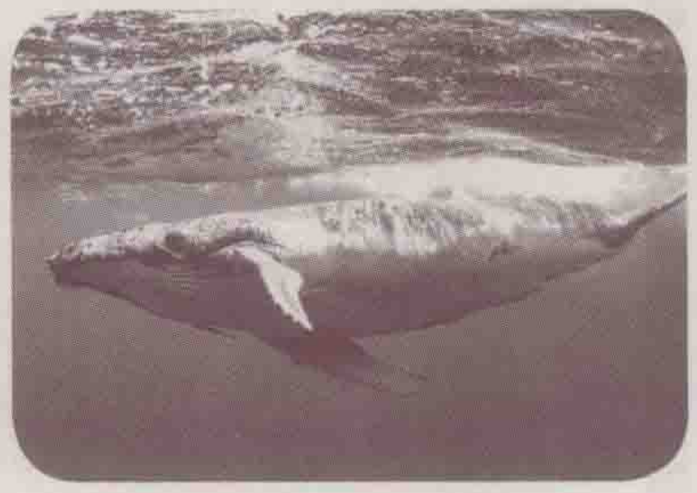
3 _____



4 _____



5 _____



6 _____

1.2 请把单词和对应的英文释义相匹配。

1 migrate　　A the gradual development of plants, animals, etc over many years as they adapt to changes in their environment

2 fieldcraft　　B move from one part of the world to another according to the season

3 evolution　　C the general health, happiness and safety of a person, an animal or a group

4 welfare　　D (of land or soil) that produces good results

5 hunt　　E the activity of living or doing things outdoors, especially when this involves special skills or experience

6 fertile　　F chase wild animals or birds in order to catch or kill them for food, sport or to make money

1.3 请从方框中选择适合的单词，并以其正确形式填空，然后听录音确定你的答案。

binoculars　image　endanger　scenery　track　expert　observe　research

David: Morning, Professor Saunders. Do you have a moment?

Saunders: Sure, David. Come in and sit down. How can I help you?

David: Well, I'm going to Scotland to conduct 1 _____ on birds this Saturday.

Saunders: Oh, yes. You're doing a project on 2 _____ bird species, aren't you?

David: Yes. This is the first time I've done this sort of research, and I'd like some advice from you as you're an 3 _____ in the field.

Saunders: OK, sure. Well, I hope you've got your 4 _____ because they're necessary. You need a very light pair that won't weigh you down, and they need to provide you with clear sights. The last thing you want is blurred 5 _____.

David: Definitely not!

Saunders: Now, the last piece of advice I'd give you is about fieldcraft.

David: Fieldcraft?

Saunders: Yes. You need to be very careful about how you 6 _____ the birds, as you don't want to scare them off with sudden movements, bright clothing, or sudden noises. You should try to be as quiet as possible when you're watching them. So, make sure your clothes blend in with the 7 _____ and keep yourself out of the birds' sight while you're 8 _____ them.

场景词汇

chimpanzee /ˌtʃɪmpæn'zi:/ *n.* 黑猩猩
dolphin /'dɒlfɪn/ *n.* 海豚
lion /'laɪən/ *n.* 狮子
giraffe /dʒə'rɑ:f/ *n.* 长颈鹿
peacock /'pi:kɒk/ *n.* 孔雀
whale /weɪl/ *n.* 鲸鱼
zoo /zu:/ *n.* 动物园
approach /ə'prəʊtʃ/ *v.* 接近
conflict /'kɒnflɪkt/ *n.* / *v.* 冲突
threat /θret/ *v.* 威胁
demonstrate /'demənstreɪt/ *v.* 证明
dispute /dɪ'spju:t/ *n.* / *v.* 争论
dwell /dwel/ *v.* 居住
evolve /i'vɒlv/ *v.* 进化
migrate /maɪ'greɪt/ *v.* 迁移

exaggerate /ɪg'zædʒəreɪt/ *v.* 夸大
binoculars /bɪ'nɒkjələz/ *n.* 双筒望远镜
consensus /kən'sensəs/ *n.* 共识
daytime /'deɪtaɪm/ *n.* 白天
enclosure /ɪn'kləʊʒə(r)/ *n.* 围场
evidence /'evɪdəns/ *n.* 证据
remain /rɪ'meɪn/ *v.* 留存；剩下
expert /'ekspɜ:t/ *n.* 专家
hunter /'hʌntə(r)/ *n.* 猎人
prey /preɪ/ *n.* 猎物 *v.* 捕食
resident /'rezɪdənt/ *n.* 居民 *adj.* 居住的
intelligent /ɪn'telɪdʒənt/ *adj.* 聪明的
vehicle /'vi:əkl/ *n.* 车辆
track /træk/ *v.* 追踪
track down 找到

2 能力培养

2.1 抓取信号词

信号词是指录音中有特殊指示意义的单词或短语，一般用来梳理逻辑、划分结构、定位答案等。之前学习过的逻辑关系词和表示关键信息的名词（如地点、人名等）、动词等都属于信号词。听录音时保持对信号词的敏感有助于考生主动寻找答案，而不是被动地等待答案出现。

2.2 抓取信号词的步骤

❶ 审题，画出题目中的关键信息，并对答案的词性、范畴等进行预测。

❷ 听录音，特别注意听信号词，可以适当做笔记，如记录下所听到的信号词，必要时可使用中文。如果信号词出现在题目中，直接圈出即可。

❸ 根据笔记写出答案，注意检查答案的格式和拼写。

❹ 再听一遍录音，找出自己没有听到的信号词。分析信号词出现的位置和答案的位置。根据信号词总结录音原文的大意和结构，并总结错过信号词的原因。

2.3 巩固练习

练习1 请看题目，圈出题目中的信号词。

Questions 1–3

Complete the notes below.

*Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.*

- In Kalahari, when a man wants to marry a girl, he has to finish a 1 _____.
- For instance, if a man can steal the 2 _____ from a lion, that proves he is able to 3 _____ his family.

Questions 4–6

Complete the flow chart below.

*Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.*

4 _____ out the prey, such as birds.

⇩

Steal the meat during the 5 _____.

⇩

Make a noise to 6 _____ the lion.

练习2 请听录音，按照要求完成练习1中的题目。

练习3 请再听一遍录音，用不同颜色的笔圈出题目中的信号词，并与练习1中圈出的信号词进行对比。

Tips

如果两次圈出的信号词几乎一样，就说明你已经掌握了正确的读题技能。

练习4 请再听一遍录音，写出每个答案前后的信号词。

1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____

4 _____ 5 _____ 6 _____

3 题型讲解

3.1 高频场景

动物类场景在雅思听力考试中很常见，多出现在Part 3和Part 4中，一般以讲座或者讲解形式出现，偶尔也会出现在旅游对话中。考生需要掌握与动物相关的场景词汇，并注意把握语篇的结构。该场景下的高频考点包括：

- 生物学讲座
- 野生动物栖息地
- 野生动物的习性
- 野生动物保护措施
- 学校生物学科作业
- 旅游导览
- 生物学与其他学科的交叉研究

3.2 题型演练

练习1 请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。

Questions 1 and 2

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–F**.*

Lions may live in the following places almost half a million years ago EXCEPT

A Moscow. B London. C Los Angeles. D Australia. E desert. F forest.

Questions 3–5

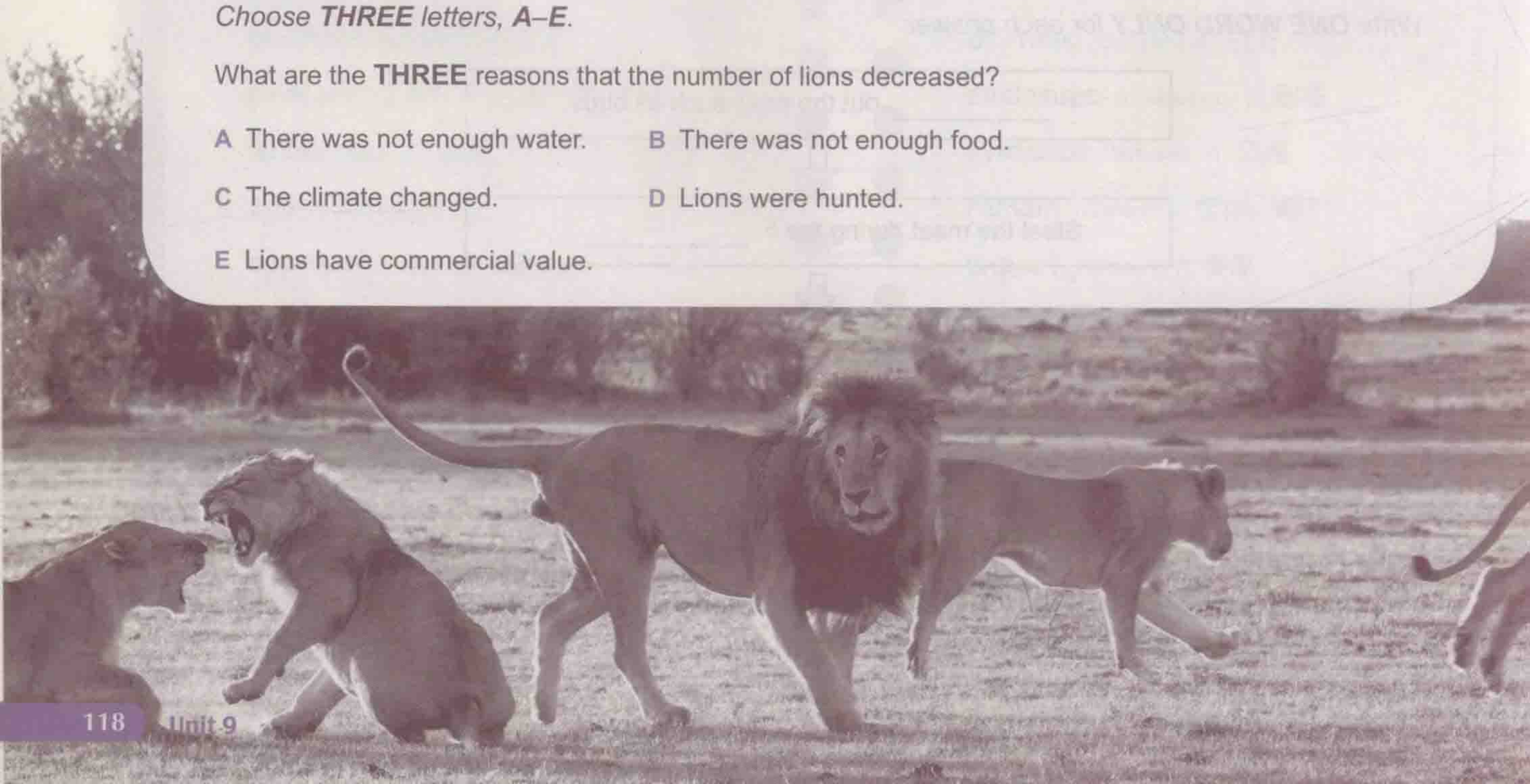
*Choose **THREE** letters, **A–E**.*

What are the **THREE** reasons that the number of lions decreased?

A There was not enough water. B There was not enough food.

C The climate changed. D Lions were hunted.

E Lions have commercial value.



练习2 请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。

Questions 1–5

Complete the notes below.

*Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.*

Robin Wildlife Park

The park was founded in the early 1 _____.

The park has about 2 _____ species and animals can walk freely in their natural habitat.

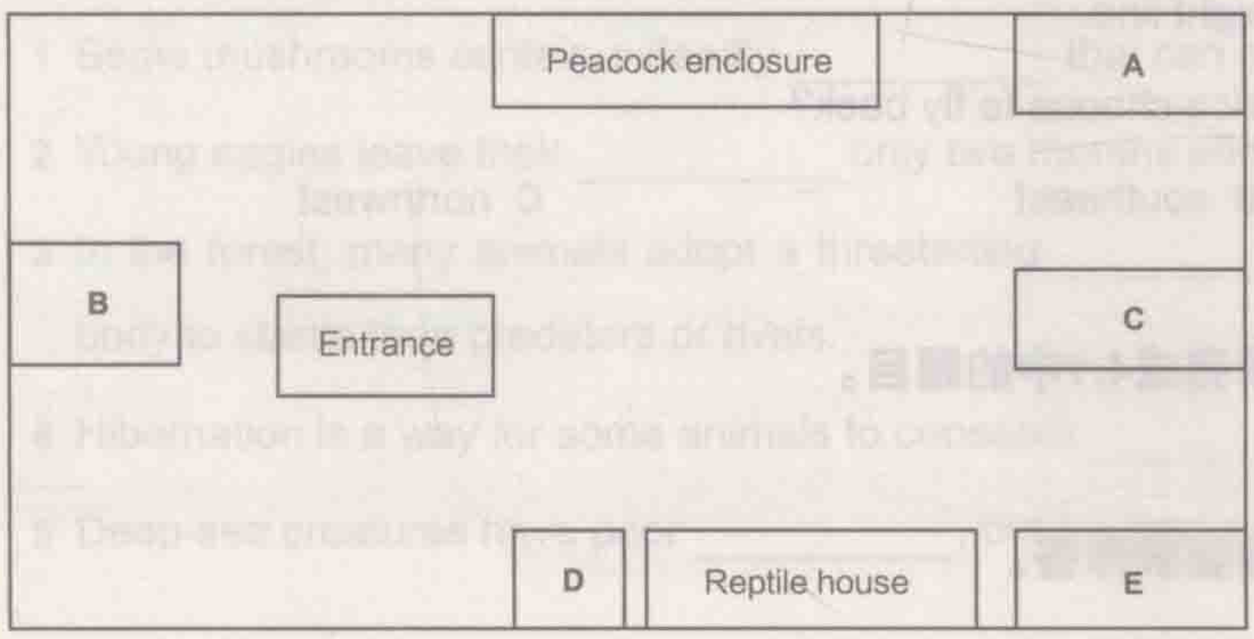
So, 3 _____ is the most important thing.

4 _____ are the most popular animal and guests can feed them with 5 _____.

Questions 6–10

Label the map below.

*Write the correct letter, **A–E**, next to Questions 6–10.*



6 Information centre _____

7 Tourist vehicles _____

8 Restroom _____

9 Oceania birds area _____

10 Lion enclosure _____

4 课后练习

4.1 请看题目，圈出题目中的信号词。

Migration of birds

Questions 1–4

What resources do the birds need at the certain time?

*Choose **FOUR** answers from the box and write the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**, next to Questions 1–4.*

A food
B suitable living places
C both food and breeding places

1 when reproducing _____

2 when looking after young birds _____

3 during spring _____

4 when the weather gets cold _____

Questions 5–8

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

5 What result does global warming lead to?

A that spring comes late

B that the birds have to migrate late

C that the number of birds decreases

6 What is NOT true about 'partial' migration?

A The birds migrate to the half way of the destination.

B Only some birds of a certain species choose to migrate.

C Some birds of a certain species do not migrate at all.

7 What can we learn about Arctic terns?

A They are the kind of bird that travels farthest.

B They can travel from the Arctic to the Antarctic.

C The route of their migration is a straight line.

8 Which direction do birds in North America choose to fly back?

A southwest　　B southeast　　C northwest

4.2 请听一段录音，并按照要求完成4.1中的题目。

4.3 请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。

Complete the table below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN ONE WORD AND/OR A NUMBER** for each answer.*

Intelligent animals

Animals	Characteristics	Examples
1 _____ and dolphins	Find food in 2 _____ and make 3 _____ when communicating	
African grey parrots	Copy 4 _____ voice	
5 _____	Have good 6 _____	7 _____ objects according to the instructions
Chimpanzees	Remember the sequences of 8 _____	Remember where the numbers from 1 to 10 were when they 9 _____ by only seeing them for 10 _____

4.4 请再听一遍录音，写出每个答案前后的信号词。

Reading

1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择正确的类别与下列给出的动物相匹配。

A reptile	B bird	C mammal	D fish

1 peacock ____ 2 goldfish ____ 3 polar bear ____ 4 shark ____ 5 crocodile ____

6 lizard ____ 7 gorilla ____ 8 parrot ____ 9 turtle ____ 10 whale ____

1.2 请从方框中选择正确的单词并以其正确形式填入空白处。

eyesight	poison	pose	nest	energy

1 Some mushrooms contain a deadly _____ that can easily kill monkeys who accidentally eat them.

2 Young eagles leave their _____ only two months after their birth.

3 In the forest, many animals adopt a threatening _____ or show the brightly coloured parts of their body to startle their predators or rivals.

4 Hibernation is a way for some animals to conserve _____ in order to survive the cold winter.

5 Deep-sea creatures have poor _____, but their other sensory systems are highly developed.

1.3 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Predator-prey Relationships

A predator is a creature or organism that eats another organism, while the prey is the object of the predator's attack. Various examples of predator and prey include lions and gazelles, bears and fish, and foxes and rabbits. When talking about 'predator' and 'prey', we usually only refer to animals that eat other animals. However, the same concept also applies to plants: bears and berries, rabbits and lettuces, grasshoppers and leaves.

The predator-prey relationship is interdependent. The prey exists in the same environment as the predator, and the predator cannot survive without food. So to successfully hunt and eat the prey, the predator evolves a body that features speed, stealth, camouflage (to disguise itself while approaching the prey), a strong sense of smell, good eyesight or hearing, immunity to the prey's poison, etc. Likewise, the predator inhabits the prey's environment and the prey's continued existence is subject to the predator's success or failure as a hunter. As a result, the prey evolves a series of corresponding mechanisms to protect itself — speed, camouflage (to

hide from the predator), a good sense of smell, good eyesight or hearing, spiky fur or hair, or poison to attack the predator when approached.

White polar bears live in a snowy environment in order to avoid being noticed as they hunt seals. Seal pups, meanwhile, are white to avoid being spotted by the bears. Lions hunt fast-moving prey, so, little by little, they evolve into fast-moving predators and the faster lions outlive the slower ones. The slowest gazelles are unable to get away from the lions, so they do not survive or reproduce. Only the faster ones survive and go on to constitute the vast bulk of the population. The key thing to note is that both lions and gazelles need to adapt to their environments in order to survive. As a result, their relationship remains the same: Because they both evolve into faster-moving animals, neither gets faster in relation to the other. This characterises all predator-prey relationships.

The Galápagos tortoise also offers insights into the relationship between the predator and the prey. Galápagos tortoises feed on the branches of the cactus plants that grow on the Galápagos Islands. The tortoises on one of the islands have long necks and the branches of the trees are higher off the ground. On another island, the tortoises have much shorter necks and feed on the branches that are lower. The cactuses (i.e. the prey) may have evolved high branches over time to deter the tortoises from feeding on them.

However, in instances where there is an interdependence between the predator and the prey, there are numerous factors that can cause an organism to adapt. Although it is likely that the elevated branches reached these heights to avoid the tortoises, it is also possible that it was due to a different cause, such as the Sun, the ocean, or another predator.

1 请从方框中选择正确的选项与下列给出的不同的进化结果相匹配。

A the predator　　B the prey　　C both the predator and the prey

1) speed _____　　2) stealth _____

3) camouflage _____　　4) spiky fur or hair _____

5) good eyesight or hearing _____　　6) poison to attack _____

2 请找出文中提到的三组捕食者和猎物之间共同进化的例子，并写下来。

3 请试着列举一些其他存在捕食者—猎物关系的动物，并写下来。

1.4 请画出文章中的生词和短语，通过词典确认它们的含义，并写下来。

_____

_____

主题词汇

hibernation /ˌhaɪbə'neɪʃn/ *n.* 冬眠

metabolism /mə'tæbəlɪzəm/ *n.* 新陈代谢

reptile /'reptaɪl/ *n.* 爬行动物

amphibian /æm'fɪbiən/ *n.* 两栖动物

rodent /'rəʊdnt/ *n.* 啮齿动物

glide /glaɪd/ *v.* 滑翔

soar /sɔː(r)/ *v.* 高飞，翱翔

devour /dɪ'vaʊə(r)/ *v.* 吞噬

shelter /'ʃeltə(r)/ *v.* 保护；掩蔽

camouflage /'kæməflɑːʒ/ *n.* 伪装

decompose /ˌdiːkəm'pəʊz/ *v.* 分解

scale /skeɪl/ *n.* 鳞片

beak /biːk/ *n.* 喙

claw /klɔː/ *n.* 爪子

plume /pluːm/ *n.* 羽毛

agile /'ædʒaɪl/ *adj.* 灵敏的

alert /ə'lɜːt/ *adj.* 警惕的

adaptive /ə'dæptɪv/ *adj.* 适应的

appealing /ə'piːlɪŋ/ *adj.* 有吸引力的

conservation /ˌkɒnsə'veɪʃn/ *n.* 保护

extinction /ɪk'stɪŋkʃn/ *n.* 灭绝

2 能力培养

文章逻辑结构分析（二）

除了第八单元学过的转折关系和对比与比较关系，顺承关系和递进关系也是文章中常见的逻辑关系。一篇文章可以借助层层递进的逻辑方式把想要说明的事物或道理阐释清楚。

1 顺承关系。顺承关系是指连续发生的事件或动作之间的顺序或序列关系。这些事件或动作之间具有先来后到的顺序，但是没有主次的分别。表示顺序或序列关系的信号词包括first，firstly，secondly，lastly，to start with，to begin with，next，subsequently，then，after that，finally，previously，afterwards，for one...for another等。表示这类逻辑关系的信号词可以将作者阐述的各项要点清晰地区分开来。

2 递进关系。递进关系通常涉及两个方面，两者在逻辑上衔接紧密，在程度或范围上更进一层。表示递进关系的信号词包括as well as，furthermore，in addition，moreover，aside from等。

此外，句子内部还存在两种比较典型的逻辑关系，即因果关系和条件关系。

1 因果关系。因果关系是表示解释说明的关系，在文中通常比较容易定位。表示因果关系的信号词包括because，since，due to，so，therefore，thus等。

2 条件关系。条件关系表示某个特定事件的发生需要满足一定的条件，即这些条件是某个特定事件发生的基础，如果没有满足相应的条件就不会有相应的结果。表示条件关系的信号词包括if，unless，providing that，depending on，as long as，once等。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The Life Cycle of Butterflies

The process in which a caterpillar transforms into a butterfly is one of the most iconic transformations in nature. So what exactly happens during this complicated process?

Butterflies begin life, like many creatures, as eggs. In the butterfly's case, each egg is similar in size to a pin. The eggs are deposited by female butterflies in small clusters onto leaves, and usually remain dormant for up to a fortnight. Then they will hatch into butterfly larvae.

The next stage is called the larval stage which is experienced by almost all insects. For example, maggots are actually fly larvae. Caterpillars, which are actually butterfly larvae, are more charismatic than most of their cohorts.

Caterpillars devour grass, leaves, and other plant material in the natural environment around them, and can grow up to 1,000 times their original birthweight. The time it takes for the larvae to grow depends upon the specific species. The wood-eating carpenterworm, for example, may remain in a larval state for up to three years.

The purpose of the larval stage is to prepare the organism for the next phase of its life when it begins to transform itself after processing the energy it consumes.

When the caterpillar has completed the larval stage, it will then start to inhabit a chrysalis, which is the last phase for the caterpillar's exoskeleton. Inside the chrysalis, the organism undergoes a remarkable series of transformations. The caterpillar starts to break down entirely on a cellular level and then reconstitutes itself into a new form. Over a few weeks, the organism is completely transformed into a butterfly.

Once a butterfly hatches from the chrysalis, it enters the final stage of its life. In this stage, it will attempt to reproduce, but this must be done as quickly as possible because a butterfly's life span is relatively short. Most adult butterflies survive for less than a month, which allows them little time to find a mate. Once the butterfly successfully finds a mate, a cluster of fertilised eggs are produced and the life cycle begins once again.

1 请从文章中找出表示蝴蝶在不同阶段形态的单词（单复数形式均可），填入空白处。

1) _____ → 2) _____ → 3) _____ → 4) _____

2 请画出文中表示顺承关系的句子，并找出信号词。

3 请将蝴蝶生长的四个阶段与其对应的表述相匹配。

Stage 1	A It is directly linked to reproduction.
Stage 2	B It is as small as a pin.
Stage 3	C It can grow up to 1,000 times its original birthweight.
Stage 4	D It undergoes a thorough transformation in its own exoskeleton.

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The Realm of Sounds Below the Ocean

A 1) The expansive oceans across the globe are murky, deep and mysterious realms where eyesight is of no importance once you travel very far below the surface.

B As people who inhabit a world dominated by images, we could not possibly survive in such conditions. 2) Yet for the whales and dolphins that inhabit the sea or a few other species living in muddy rivers and estuaries, the absence of light makes no difference. The most important thing for them is the sound.

C 3) The sound is an effective method of sending and receiving information because it travels at a speed nearly fives times faster in water than it does through air. 4) If people shout to somebody, they are unlikely to be heard by someone 10 kilometres away. 5) However, if a whale emits a loud sound in the sea, other whales can possibly hear it at a distance of more than ten kilometres.

D Dolphins and whales make use of sounds in two ways: for communicating with other members of their species and for orientation. Toothed whales and other underwater species send information by using a broad range of high-frequency sounds — clear tone shrills, squeals or barks.

E 6) Aside from making use of sounds to send information, dolphins and toothed whales also use echolocation to gather important information about the environment around them, such as any predators nearby that may pose a threat. The creatures emit intense short broad-band pulses of sounds within an ultrasonic range. Such sounds are short and usually last for less than a millisecond. But they are emitted repeatedly within a second.

1 请为文中编号的句子选择正确的逻辑关系，并画出句中的逻辑信号词。（有的题目可选择2个信号词）

A 条件　　B 因果　　C 转折　　D 递进

1) _____　　2) _____　　3) _____

4) _____　　5) _____　　6) _____

2 请判断下列表述是否正确。正确的画√，错误的画×。

1) The sound is crucial to whales and dolphins, just like it is crucial to humans.

2) The sound is an efficient way to transmit information as it travels faster through water than through air.

3) Dolphins and toothed whales can find their enemies by means of echolocation.

3 题型讲解

小标题匹配题（二）

我们在第八单元了解到，小标题匹配题既考查考生对于全文的理解，也考查考生对于具体段落的理解。此外，小标题匹配题属于乱序题，题目的难度也因此有所增加。不过，此类题目通常会出现在文章之前，这个题型不仅可以帮助考生提前了解文章每个段落的大意和文章的逻辑结构，对于解答同一篇文章下的其他题目也有一定帮助。

Tips

段落的主旨句通常出现在每段的首句、次句或尾句，阅读语篇时要重点关注。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

1 Which of the following statements best describes Paragraph A?

A Vampire bats are white-winged and hairy-legged.

B Vampire bats account for the biggest group of bats.

C Vampire bats are harmful to humans.

D An introduction to the three types of vampire bats was given.

2 Which of the following is discussed in Paragraph B?

A food sources and lifespans

B physical appearances and lifespans

C physical appearances and movements

D movements and food sources

3 请将段落C–E与其对应的小标题相匹配。

1) Paragraph C　　i The social structure inside the vampire bat groups

2) Paragraph D　　ii The biological features and preying habits of vampire bats

3) Paragraph E　　iii The relatives of vampire bats

4 请思考每段的主旨句分别在段落中的哪个位置。

Vampire Bats

A Vampire bats, found in the tropics and subtropics of the American continent, belong to the Desmodontidae family of bats. The common vampire bat, along with the white-winged vampire bat and the hairy-legged vampire bat is the type of bat that consumes blood. Agricultural areas tend to have an abundance of common vampire bats, as they survive by consuming the blood of livestock such as cattle, pigs, and chickens. The other two types of vampire bats are generally found in forests, where they live on birds, reptiles, and other forest animals.

B Common vampire bats have no tails and are medium-sized, stretching up to a length of less than 10 centimetres. Weight depends on the volume of blood they ingest. A bat weighing up to 60 grammes, for instance, might even be able to double its weight after one feed. Therefore, their weight is variable. They have short fur, ranging in colour from brown to reddish orange, and long pointed wings. They move about in a way that is quite similar to frogs because they have exceptionally long thumbs. Many bats are unable to take off from the ground. However, the common vampire bat is an exception, which can use its long thumbs to jump up to a metre in the air in order to take off.

C Bats are nocturnal and emerge from their habitats after dark. They typically live within hollow trees or caves, finding their way around by echolocation and seeking their prey with heat sensors located in the face. The bats usually land near their resting prey and then hop or crawl towards it. They use their razor-sharp incisor teeth to bore small holes through the skin of their prey. The incisions tend not to be noticed by the resting prey, and the bats then feed on the blood by sucking it from the wound they have made. Vampire bats have a special anticoagulant in their saliva to keep the blood from clotting, which makes it easy for them to consume it. Sometimes the wounds on animals can get infected but are generally not dangerous. Vampire bats are considered harmful pests wherever they are found, as they frequently transmit rabies to livestock. Humans can also be infected.

D Vampire bats have a hugely complex social network. Members of the group of bats ensure that every creature within the group is fed by sharing blood. Unlike other bats that are usually weaned after four to six weeks, young vampire bats remain with their mothers for up to several months before they are able to survive alone. Females and their offspring form stable groups that live together in the same space, while male bats live separately, with the exception of dominant males who co-habit with the females.

E Vampire bats are related to the New World leaf-nosed bats and are sometimes classified with them as a subfamily. The New World false vampire bats are known as phyllostomatids and are

much bigger in appearance than vampire bats. Although a large number of vampire species appear physically intimidating and dangerous, their snouts and long canine teeth are only capable of attacking small prey.

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The passage below has five paragraphs, **A**–**E**.

Choose the correct heading for each paragraph from the list of headings below.

List of headings

- **i** The endangered situation of snow leopards
- **ii** The definition and habitats of snow leopards
- **iii** The food sources on which snow leopards feed
- **iv** Categorisation and relatives of snow leopards
- **v** The reasons why snow leopards are in peril
- **vi** General statistics of a snow leopard's physical appearance
- **vii** Snow leopards' predators in the wild

1 Paragraph **A**

2 Paragraph **B**

3 Paragraph **C**

4 Paragraph **D**

5 Paragraph **E**

Snow Leopard

A Snow leopard, sometimes known as snow panther, is a large long-haired Asian cat belonging to the Felidae family. The snow leopard is found in the mountainous regions of central Asia and the Indian subcontinent, where it can survive at an elevation of about 1,800 metres during the winter to 5,500 metres in the summer.

B It is characterised by a soft coat, made up of a thick undercoat which insulates it against the cold, as well as an outer coat of hairs about five centimetres in length. Its outward appearance is pale greyish in colour, with dark rosettes and a dark streak along the backbone. The fur on the underparts of the snow leopard can be as long as ten centimetres and is white all over. Snow leopards can be in excess of two metres in total length, with a tail that can stretch up to one metre. The snow leopard stands more than half a metre high, weighing between 23 kilogrammes and 51 kilogrammes. The creature is nocturnal and preys



on a variety of species, such as marmots, wild sheep, and domestic livestock. The offspring of snow leopards are born after three months of conception and tend to come in litters of two, three or four.

C The scientific classification of snow leopards puts them in the Panthera genus, along with the lion, tiger, and other big cats. The snow leopard has unique and distinct skeletal features, including a shorter skull and more-rounded eye orbits. For this reason, it is classified by some authorities as the sole member of the Uncia genus. The genetic lineage of snow leopards can be traced back to almost four million years ago, as studies illustrate that the common ancestor of snow leopards and tigers diverged from the lineage of big cats. It is estimated that snow leopards branched from tigers just over three million years ago.

D Over the last few decades, the snow leopard has been regarded as an endangered species and thus it can be found at various times on the Red List of Threatened Species from the International Union for Conservation of Nature. Nowadays, however, the snow leopard's endangered status has been changed to 'vulnerable' after it was discovered that the species' population was underestimated during a survey in 2008. There are approximately 2,500 to 10,000 adult snow leopards still inhabiting the wild, yet the threats to their long-term survival haven't been eliminated.

E Snow leopards are under threat for a number of reasons. Their wild prey is in decline as

herding and ranching activities have continued to expand throughout the areas they inhabit, where they are often hunted by herders and ranchers to protect livestock. Another reason is that their bones and hides are sought after by hunters and poachers for the illegal animal trade.

4 课后练习

请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The passage below has six paragraphs, **A**–**F**.

Choose the correct heading for each paragraph from the list of headings below.

List of headings

i The severe pressure from modernisation on wildlife's habitats

ii The problem of poaching in Kenya and the measures taken by the Wildlife Act to inhibit poaching

iii The abundant species of animals in Kenya

iv The assistance from The Wildlife Foundation in protecting the Nairobi National Park

v The Wildlife Act in Kenya

vi The trend of Kenya's wildlife protection projects

vii The detrimental effects of terrorism and other illegal activities on Kenya's wildlife

viii Multinational action to protect Kenya's biodiversity

ix Geographical features of wildlife zones in Kenya

1 Paragraph **A**

2 Paragraph **B**

3 Paragraph **C**

4 Paragraph **D**

5 Paragraph **E**

6 Paragraph **F**

African Wildlife Conservation and Kenya's Wildlife Act

A Wildlife conservation and community-based conservation projects have been a feature of Kenyan life for decades. However, such conservation projects are now in decline as rapid and unpredictable socio-economic change and growing ethnic and clan conflicts erupt across the country.

B The Wildlife Foundation (TWF) has been collaborating with local communities to prevent the urban sprawl of the nation's capital, Nairobi, from impacting upon surrounding wildlife. TWF supported an open-ecosystem biodiversity corridor for the Nairobi National Park (NNP) and, at the start of the 21st century, initiated a simple lease scheme. The aim of this initiative was to provide funding for local landowners to assist them in maintaining traditional lifestyles, which would ensure their land remains open and unfenced. As a result, more than 50,000 acres (202 km^2) of land was added to the 29,000 acres (117 km^2) of the NNP under conservation protection. The NNP is a massive undertaking and represents a standard for effective animal and environmental protection at a local level. The ecosystems within the NNP remain under threat and in constant need of support, which is why legislation has been passed by the Kenyan government to protect this important area.

C In 2013, the government passed the Wildlife Act, also referred to as the Wildlife Conservation and Management Act, which was designed to ensure the conservation initiatives continue in an enduring and sustainable manner. One of the provisions of the new law was that community conservation committees should be established to give local communities the chance to benefit from the area's wildlife.

D Nonetheless, the rapid changes brought about by modernity have seen that once nomadic, pastoral lifestyles of local people make way for new ways of living. In the past, farmers and nomads would allow weather patterns to determine their movements, meaning they could co-exist peacefully with wildlife. However, the intense population pressures have impacted on traditional wildlife habitats, meaning landowners sometimes have no option but to act in a way that threatens wildlife and ecosystems.

E One major threat to Kenya's wildlife population is the sale of ivory and rhino horn by poaching. Twenty-five per cent of Kenya's elephants and rhinos have diminished over the past few years as a consequence of unrestricted poaching, and many predict that the elephant and rhino will become extinct within this generation unless major steps are taken.

The government's Wildlife Act sets out measures aimed at curbing poaching, such as imposing fines and taking legal steps, yet many believe this legislation itself is insubstantial.

F Another problem associated with the ivory and rhino horn trade is terrorism, which is a threat Kenya takes seriously. Recent terrorist attacks in Kenya have led to tourists' avoiding Kenya's parks and beaches, which has had a negative impact on the country's tourism sector, leading to the decline of infrastructure and revenues for wildlife protection. The Mwaluganje Elephant Sanctuary in Kwale, set up in the early 1990s to protect local wildlife, is now completely defunct and closed. The local community has wiped out all the elephants through poaching, and it no longer functions as a tourist attraction. Kenya is attempting to counteract these conservation challenges through the new Wildlife Act, which is aimed at establishing institutions for wildlife management by involving local communities, pursuing sustainability, and introducing anti-poaching measures. The effects of the legislation have yet to be seen and judgement on its effectiveness must be delayed.

Speaking

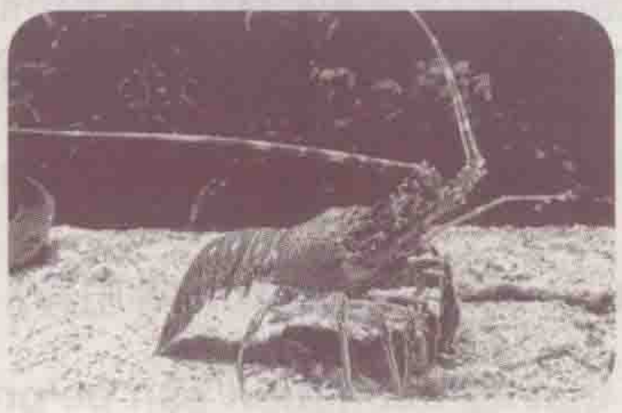
1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择正确的单词填入对应的图片下方。

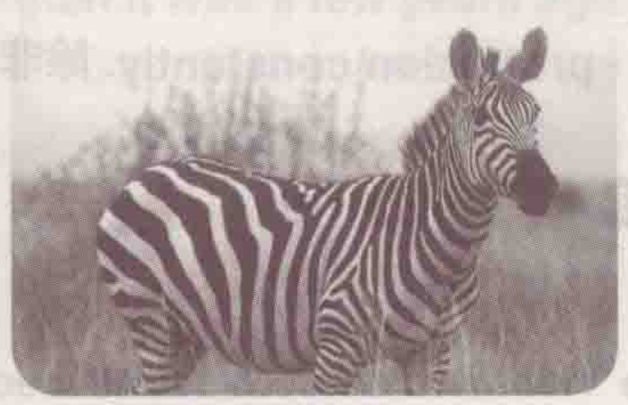
leopard　　elephant　　zebra　　shark　　crab　　lobster



1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____



5 _____



6 _____

1.2 请用3个形容词描述1.1中的每种动物，并参考以下示例向他人介绍它们。

Example Leopard is the most distinctive one of the cat family. It's one of the fastest land animals, representing power and strength. It hunts other animals to gain the nutrition it needs to survive. The spot pattern on its fur makes it extremely attractive.

2 能力培养

2.1 语法训练——状语从句

❶ 时间状语从句

时间状语从句通常由when，as，before，after，since，until，till，whenever等连词引导。有的时间状语从句可以由短语或副词等引导，这些表达在句中起连词的作用，如the moment，as soon as，immediately，now等。

- We should give a hand to wildlife conservation **whenever we can do it**.
  无论何时，只要有能力，我们就应该为保护野生生物出一份力。
- Tigers always move at a slow pace **as they get closer to their prey**, hunting in an elegant way.
  老虎总是慢慢靠近猎物，优雅地捕食。

- The pigeons flew away **as soon as they found someone approaching**. 鸽子一发现有人靠近就飞走了。
- **Immediately the prey turned around**, the leopard's eyes lit up. 猎物刚一转身，豹子的眼睛就亮了起来。

❷ 条件状语从句

条件状语从句中最常用的连词是if和unless。另外，还有一些起连词作用的词和短语也可以引导条件状语从句，如supposing (that)，provided (that)，in case等。

- **If animals have tears**, they will definitely cry when humans are hunting them.
  如果动物有眼泪，当遭到人类猎杀的时候，它们一定会哭泣。
- The illegal animal hunting will not be reduced **unless we enhance the public awareness of animal protection constantly**. 除非我们持续加强公众的动物保护意识，否则非法的动物捕猎将不会减少。

❸ 目的状语从句

目的状语从句多由so (that)，that，in case，for fear that等引导，表示做某事的目的或某物的用途。

- Research on wildlife is needed **so that its extinction can be prevented as early as possible**.
  我们需要开展野生生物研究，以尽早防止野生生物的灭绝。
- The rescue team prepared some large cages **in case the mysterious animal is too big**.
  救援队准备了一些大笼子，以防这只神秘动物的体型过于庞大。

❹ 原因状语从句

引导原因状语从句的主要连词有because，since，as等。另外，一些现在分词也可以充当连词，引导原因状语从句，如considering (that)，seeing (that)等。

- They could help the injured fox **since they have the animal care equipment**.
  因为有动物护理设备，他们可以帮助那只受伤的狐狸。
- **Considering he has just started**, he knows a lot about how to raise ducks.
  鉴于他才刚刚开始，他对如何养鸭子已经懂得相当多了。

❺ 让步状语从句

让步状语从句的大意通常是“虽然（尽管）……但是……”，一般由while，although，though，even if，no matter who / how / where等引导。

- Some animals mean good luck in Chinese culture **even if they probably have different meanings in Western cultures**. 有些动物在中国文化里代表好运，尽管在西方文化中它们可能有不同的寓意。
- No one has the right to hurt animals **no matter who he is**. 任何人都没有伤害动物的权利，不管他是谁。

❻ 方式状语从句

方式状语从句通常用于描述做事情的方式，主要由as，as if，like等连词引导。

- The government has attached more importance to environmental protection **as its citizens have already done**. 同市民所做的一样，政府也已经更加重视环境保护了。
- Environmental protection should be propelled step by step **like some countries did several years ago**.
  就像一些国家几年前所做的那样，环境保护需要循序渐进地推进。

❼ 地点状语从句

地点状语从句是由where，wherever，everywhere等引导的，表示地点或境况的状语从句。

- I think little animals should live **where they can play and run freely**.
  我认为小动物应该生活在能够自由玩耍和奔跑的地方。
- We should treat animals kindly **wherever we go**. 不管去哪里，我们都应该善待动物。

❽ 比较状语从句

比较状语从句是由than，as等引导的，用于比较不同事物的从句。

- Discussion about environmental protection has become more heated **than it was a few years ago**.
  有关环境保护问题的讨论已经比前几年升温不少了。
- I haven't done **as** much **as I should have liked**.
  我做的没有我希望的那么好。

练习1 请根据中文和括号中的提示，将下列两个英文句子合并为一个包含状语从句的句子。

1 调查小组一到这个小镇上就发现这里的人们以打猎为生。（时间状语从句）

The investigation team arrived at the small town.

The investigation team found that people here made a living by hunting.

---

2 如果一个物种失去了觅食能力，那么它很快就会灭绝。（条件状语从句）

A kind of species will be extinct soon.

A kind of species loses its ability to find food.

---

3 鹿跑得很快，这样才能把狮子甩掉。（目的状语从句）

The deer ran fast.

The deer could throw the lion off.

---

4 由于环境问题仍未解决，土地污染已经威胁了许多动物的栖息地。（原因状语从句）

Soil pollution has threatened many animals' habitats.

Environmental problems still haven't been solved.

---

5 尽管在过去的几个月里，我在这个保护区里帮忙种了一些灌木，这里对我来说仍然很陌生。（让步状语从句）

This conservation area was still unfamiliar to me.

In the last few months, I have helped plant some bushes in this conservation area.

---

6 猎豹的奔跑速度快到仿佛超过了闪电。（方式状语从句）

Leopards are amazingly swift.

Leopards seem faster than lightning.

---

7 你最好在你有问题的地方做标记。（地点状语从句）

You'd better make a mark.

You have questions.

---

8 在过去的几十年里，我们从未见过如此多的非法猎杀大象的案件。（比较状语从句）

There had never been so many cases of illegal elephant hunting.

We have seen cases of illegal elephant hunting in the last few decades.

练习2 请用已学词汇和语法描述下列图片。



Example

Deer are very adorable, so it is no surprise that they are well-loved animals...

2.2 发音训练——降调

降调一般用于陈述、命令，表达“完整”“肯定”的含义，给人一种完结的印象。能使用降调的句子有：陈述句、特殊疑问句、表示命令的祈使句、感叹句等。另外，选择疑问句的最后一个列举项、反义疑问句的前半句，以及表示肯定的简短问句等通常也使用降调。

请听录音，跟读以下例句，通过模仿纠正自己的发音。

陈述句

- Those animal experts have been studying giant pandas in their native habitat since the 1990s.
  从20世纪90年代开始，那些动物专家就一直在大熊猫自然栖息地研究大熊猫。
- People now realise that wild animals should be protected. 人们现在意识到野生动物应该受到保护。
- It was my first time at the reptile house and I felt like a fish out of water.
  这是我第一次来到爬行动物馆，我感到很不自在。

特殊疑问句

- Where do bats live? 蝙蝠生活在哪里?
- Why are monkeys so smart? 猴子为什么这么聪明?
- What's the significance of dragon in Chinese culture? 龙在中国文化中的意义是什么?

表示命令的祈使句

- Stop moving! There is a snake near you. 别动！你旁边有条蛇。
- Don't be shy. Shake your hands with the baby kangaroo. 别害羞。快和袋鼠宝宝握握手吧。
- Let's go home. The zoo will close soon. 咱们回家吧。动物园就要关门了。

感叹句

- How wonderful it is to take a walk in the park! 在公园里走一走，感觉多好啊！
- The African savannah! What an amazing view it is! 非洲大草原！多么令人惊叹的景色啊！
- How dangerous! You are not supposed to stand behind a horse! 多危险啊！你不该站在马的后面！

选择疑问句的最后一个列举项

- Is the frog green or black? 青蛙是绿色的还是黑色的?
- Do you like tigers, lions, or bears? 你喜欢老虎、狮子还是熊?
- Shall we feed the deer now or later? 我们应该现在喂小鹿还是晚一点再喂?

反义疑问句的前半句

- You are a student majoring in biology, aren't you? 你是一名生物学专业的学生，不是吗?
- She is afraid of spiders, isn't she? 她害怕蜘蛛，对不对?
- Harry doesn't think the owl is awful, does he? 哈里不觉得猫头鹰令人讨厌，是吗?

表示肯定的简短问句

- —Tom is a volunteer in this wildlife protection activity.
  汤姆是这次野生动物保护行动的一名志愿者。
  —Is he?
  哦，是吗?
- —I went to the zoo yesterday.
  我昨天去动物园了。
  —Did you?
  哦，你去了?

3 话题讲解

3.1 雅思口语Part 1——动物类



雅思口语动物类最常考的话题是宠物和动物保护，备考时是否多积累关于动物的种类和特征的词汇和表达就可以了?

如果想要取得比较高的分数，可以避开猫、狗这种常见的动物，准备一些与鸟类或海洋生物相关的语料。





关于动物保护，是否应该重点谈动物保护的重要性?

建议谈动物保护的具体措施，可以从观念宣传、教育和法律政策等多方面思考，挑选其中一两点详细描述即可。



考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

- Are people in your country fond of animals?
- What is the most popular animal in your country?
- How do people in your country feel about wild animals in captivity?
- Should we teach children to protect animals?

话题表达

penguin /'peŋgwɪn/ *n.* 企鹅

eagle /'i:gl/ *n.* 鹰

seagull /'si:gʌl/ *n.* 海鸥

swan /swɒn/ *n.* 天鹅

parrot /'pærət/ *n.* 鹦鹉

sparrow /'spærəʊ/ *n.* 麻雀

bird of prey 猛禽

bird nest 鸟窝

yearly migration 一年一次的迁徙

Animals do bring...and... 动物确实能带来……和……

In the countryside / rural area, each household typically keeps... 在乡村，每家每户通常都会养……

In the city, many people, especially the young, do not hesitate to spend money on... 在城市里，许多人，尤其是年轻人，会毫不犹豫地在……上花钱。

Honestly speaking, I'm not familiar with... at all. 老实说，我对……一点也不熟悉。

I guess...must be among the most popular animals. 我想……一定是最受欢迎的动物之一。

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

People in my country love birds. It is said that in the north there is a city particularly famous for the protection of red-crowned cranes, which migrate there annually. For me, birds are lovely creatures with vivid feathers. In fact, some birds are naughty, so watching their behaviour can be amusing. However, a considerable number of bird species are endangered due to inappropriate human activities. To protect these creatures, it is really important to educate children and cultivate their sense of wildlife protection.

3.2 雅思口语Part 2——地点类

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

Describe a garden / park you visited and liked.

You should say:

where it was

when you went there

what you did there

and explain why you liked it.

思路解析与拓展



雅思口语Part 2地点类话题通常可以从地点的特征、造访这个地点的时间、你的感受等角度进行详细描述。



哦，是吗？例如描述公园时，可以讲述公园的地理位置、公园的季节性特征、公园里的动植物或设施等。对吗？



是的，如果聊到野生动物园，或者某种主题公园，还可以详细描述里面的动物或最吸引你的主题。

话题表达

a wide array of 各种各样的

ancient Chinese sculpture 中国古代雕塑

the well-trimmed grass 修剪整齐的草地

go for a stroll 散步

hectic /'hektɪk/ *adj.* 繁忙的，忙乱的

frantic /'fræntɪk/ *adj.* 紧张忙乱的

tedious /'ti:diəs/ *adj.* 枯燥乏味的

hustle and bustle 熙熙攘攘

the twitter of birds 鸟儿叽叽喳喳的叫声

fragrance of flowers 花朵的芬芳

Once we arrive at the... 我们一到……

The park is full of... 公园里到处都是……

I enjoy my time in the park because... 我很享受在公园的时光，因为……

I enjoy being in a...place, away from... 我喜欢在一个……的地方，远离……

It's a place for me to... 在这个地方，我能……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

My friend Mary took me to a park on the outskirts of Beijing last month. The park is full of different species of birds such as cuckoos and magpies, each of them being unique and lovely. There are also trees with diverse sizes and flowers with distinctive aromas. Ancient Chinese sculptures can be seen everywhere. What you can find and enjoy in the park is impressive.

It was the twitter of swift birds, swimming ducks in the lake, and the peaceful atmosphere that gave me a chance to appreciate the inner beauty of nature. Mary and I sat on the green grass to have a picnic. We also went for a stroll around the park, discussing problems that we came across.

I really enjoyed my time in the park because the air was much fresher. I took a lot of amazing photos with Mary and was reluctant to leave. Being in such a quiet and peaceful place is exactly what I need to stay away from the hustle and bustle of city life.

4 课后练习

4.1 请选择正确的单词或短语填空，并朗读语段。

rainforests	against	cruelty	in the wild	endangered
natural habitats	cosmetic	laboratory experiments		

I am strongly 1 _____ keeping animals in zoos. Animals should be 2 _____ where they live freely. We should stop destroying the ecosystem in 3 _____ to protect their 4 _____. I am also totally against using animals in 5 _____ for 6 _____ testing. Hunting 7 _____ animals for their skins is another 8 _____ to animals.

4.2 请回答以下问题。

- Why are some wild animals becoming extinct?
- What are the benefits and drawbacks of keeping animals in zoos?
- Describe a place you have visited and would like to visit again.

  You should say:

  where it was

  when you went there

  what you did there

  and explain why you would like to visit it again.

- Describe a thing you did that is good for animal protection.

  You should say:

  what it was

  when you did it

  how you did it

  and explain why you did it and what was the result.

Writing

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据中文提示拼写出以下单词。

1 生物 cr_ _t_ _ _　2 同伴 p_ _tn_ _　3 打击 c_ _b_t

4 研究 r_s_ _ _ _ _　5 捕捉 c_pt_ _ _　6 痛苦 p_ _n

7 道德的 _th_c_ _　8 医学的 m_d_c_ _

1.2 请使用1.1中的单词填空，将下列表达补充完整。

1 make a major breakthrough in _____ research

2 _____ consideration in animal experiments

3 cause physical and emotional _____

4 _____ illegal wildlife trade

5 do scientific _____ on wild animals

6 a wild _____ in the forest

2 能力培养

2.1 词汇表达

❶ 核心单词及其派生词

核心单词	派生词
amuse /ə'mju:z/ *v.* 给……提供娱乐	amusement /ə'mju:zmənt/ *n.* 娱乐，消遣
cruel /'kru:əl/ *adj.* 残酷的	cruelty /'kru:əlti/ *n.* 残酷
agriculture /'ægrɪkʌltʃə(r)/ *n.* 农业	agricultural /ˌægrɪ'kʌltʃərəl/ *adj.* 农业的
preserve /prɪ'zɜ:v/ *v.* 保护	preservation /ˌprezə'veɪʃn/ *n.* 保护
toxic /'tɒksɪk/ *adj.* 有毒的	toxicity /tɒk'sɪsəti/ *n.* 毒性
company /'kʌmpəni/ *n.* 伙伴；陪伴	companion /kəm'pæniən/ *n.* 同伴
capture /'kæptʃə(r)/ *n.* 捕获	captivity /kæp'tɪvəti/ *n.* 囚禁
simulate /'sɪmjuleɪt/ *v.* 模拟	simulation /ˌsɪmju'leɪʃn/ *n.* 模拟
biology /baɪ'ɒlədʒi/ *n.* 生物学	biological /ˌbaɪə'lɒdʒɪkl/ *adj.* 生物的
experiment /ɪk'sperɪmənt/ *n.* 实验；试验 *v.* 进行实验，做试验	experimental /ɪkˌsperɪ'mentl/ *adj.* 实验的；试验性的

❷ 常用短语

biological research 生物研究

suffer from physical and mental cruelty 遭受肉体和精神的双重虐待

alternative methods / techniques for animal experiments 替代动物试验的方法 / 技术

test food security 测试食品安全

wildlife conservation / preservation 野生动植物保护

protect endangered species 保护濒危物种

computer model / simulation 电脑模型 / 模拟

synthetic stuff 合成材料

rely on animals and plants to provide food 依靠动物和植物提供食物

fox hunting 猎杀狐狸

adverse side effects of newly developed vaccines 新研发疫苗的不良副作用

develop a vaccine against... 研制一种抵抗……的疫苗

expansion of human activity space 人类活动空间的扩张

increase agricultural yields 增加农业产量

livestock farming 畜牧业

ecosystem with a wider range of species 物种更加多样的生态系统

cause damage to the natural / marine ecosystems 对自然 / 海洋生态系统造成破坏

ensure a more reliable supply of fresh water 确保更稳定的淡水供应

toxic groundwater 有毒的地下水

widespread famine 大范围的饥荒

hunger-based diseases 因饥饿造成的疾病

develop biodegradable pesticides 开发能进行生物降解的杀虫剂

generate tourism revenue 创造旅游收益

habitat protection / conservation 栖息地保护

be kept in captivity 被圈养

❸ 句型及例句

Some people believe that... 一些人认为……

- **Some people believe that** wild animals should never be kept in captivity.
  一些人认为野生动物绝不应该被圈养起来。

...is fragile with the threat from... ……因……的威胁而易受破坏

- Today's ecosystem **is fragile with the threat from** climate change, urbanisation and overpopulation. 由于气候变化、城市化和人口过剩的威胁，今天的生态系统很脆弱。

foster harmony between...and... 促进……与……的和谐相处

- The proposal of **fostering harmony between** man **and** nature has stressed the urgency and importance of keeping ecological balance and protecting wildlife.
  促进人与自然和谐相处的倡议强调了保持生态平衡和保护野生生物的紧迫性和重要性。

...be able to... ……能够……

- After decades of in-depth research, scientists **are able to** find better ways to deal with cancer.
  经过几十年的深入研究，科学家们能够找到更好的方法来应对癌症。

练习 请从方框中选择适合的表达并以其正确的形式填空，完成句子。

expansion of spaces for human habitation	kept in captivity	generate tourism revenue
synthetic stuff	fox hunting	relying on animals and plants

1 _____ was a popular leisure activity for the upper class in some Western countries in the past.

2 The _____ has played a vital role in killing wild species off.

3 Experiments should use _____ instead of animals.

4 Animals _____ may gradually lose their wild nature.

5 Zoos can protect endangered animals and attract tourists to _____.

6 It is impossible to deny the fact that human beings are still _____ to provide food.

2.2 语法重点

❶ it型强调句

为了突出想要传达的重要信息，引起特别注意，可以使用it型强调句，被强调的部分可以是主语、宾语或状语等。

it型强调句的句型结构为：It is / was + 被强调部分 + that + 其他部分。

一般来说，当被强调部分为人时，用who或whom代替that。

以下面的句子为例：

Many celebrities	get involved in	promoting wildlife protection	via public service announcements.
主语	谓语	宾语	状语

强调主语

- **It is** many celebrities **who** get involved in promoting wildlife protection via public service announcements.
  许多名人通过公益广告参与了促进野生生物保护的活动。

强调宾语

- **It is** promoting wildlife protection **that** many celebrities get involved in via public service announcements.
  促进野生生物保护是许多名人通过公益广告参与的活动。

强调状语

- **It is** via public service announcements **that** many celebrities get involved in promoting wildlife protection.
  通过公益广告，许多名人参与了促进野生生物保护的活动。

❷ it作形式主语

为避免头重脚轻，当句子的主语为不定式短语、动名词短语或主语从句等较长的结构时，通常使用it作为句子的形式主语，放在句首，而将句子真正的主语放在后面。

It is / was + 形容词 + (for / of somebody) to do something

- **It is necessary** to combat illegal wildlife trade. 打击非法野生生物交易是必要的。
- **It is impossible** for human beings to live on the planet on their own without other creatures.
  没有其他生物，人类是不可能独立在地球上生存的。
- **It is very kind** of the old lady to take care of the injured bird.
  那位老太太照顾那只受伤的鸟，真是非常善良。

It is / was + 名词 + doing something

该句型常用于It is no use / good / help + doing something中。

- Some argue that **it is no use** devoting too much money to protect animals and plants.
  一些人认为花太多的钱来保护动植物是没用的。

It is / was + 名词 / 形容词 + that从句

- **It is a fact** that wildlife is influenced by climate change. 事实上，野生生物会受到气候变化的影响。
- **It is no doubt** that everyone should devote himself to wildlife protection.
  毫无疑问，每个人都应该投身于野生生物保护事业。
- **It is obvious** that animals are an integral part of the natural ecosystem.
  显然，动物是自然生态系统中不可缺少的一部分。
- **It is likely** that the injured animals can enjoy better care and treatment in the zoo.
  受伤的动物很可能在动物园里得到更好的照料和治疗。

练习 **请按照括号中的要求改写以下句子。**

1 The expansion of human population is reducing biological diversity to its lowest level.（强调主语）

_____

2 Livestock farming is responsible for large greenhouse gas emissions.（强调宾语）

_____

3 Animal research plays an essential role in finding life-saving medicines.（强调状语）

_____

4 That loss of habitat has been the leading cause of extinction is a fact.（改写为It is / was + 名词 + that从句）

_____

5 That animals bear a likeness to humans in many physical aspects is apparent.（改写为It is / was + 形容词 + that从句）

_____

6 Captive animals do not need to hunt or raise offspring.（改写为It is / was + 形容词 + for somebody to do something）

_____

2.3 衔接方式

❶ after all

意为“毕竟”，既可以用在句首，也可以用在句中作插入语。

- **After all**, animals are humans' friends. 毕竟，动物是人类的朋友。

❷ above all

意为“首先”，起强调作用，既可以用在句首，也可以用在句中作插入语。

- Effective measures should be taken to protect wildlife. **Above all**, individuals should start by refusing to use products made from animals.
  应该采取有效措施保护野生生物。首先，每个人都应该从拒绝使用由动物制成的产品做起。

❸ first and foremost

意为“首先，首要的是”，既可以用于提出观点，也可以用于强调某个特点。

- **First and foremost**, it is necessary to help people realise the importance of animals and plants for the survival of human beings. 首先，有必要帮助人们认识到动植物对人类生存的重要性。

❹ to illustrate this

意为“举例来说”，用于引出具体的例子进行解释说明。

- Global warming is likely to have a serious impact on animals. **To illustrate this**, melting glaciers have put polar bears under the risk of extinction in recent decades.
  全球变暖可能对动物造成严重影响。举例来说，近几十年来，冰川融化导致北极熊濒临灭绝。

❺ in other words

意为“换句话说”，用于解释说明。通常放在句首，其后用逗号隔开。

- **In other words**, building conservation areas is one of the most effective ways to protect animals.
  换句话说，建立保护区是保护动物最有效的方式之一。

❻ in a word

意为“总之”，用于总结性说明。通常放在句首，其后用逗号隔开。

- **In a word**, we must learn to live in harmony with nature before it is too late.
  总之，我们必须学会与自然和谐相处，否则就来不及了。

练习 **请从方框中选出符合以下写作题目的句子，每个题目对应两个选项。**

A After all, the destruction of the food chain will have disastrous results for food availability.

B Above all, animal tests in the laboratory environment cause pain and distress.

C First and foremost, the leather industry not only causes pain for animals but also pollutes the environment.

D To illustrate this, many replacements have proven superior to animal tests for a multitude of investigative purposes.

E In other words, zoos help to raise public awareness by educating people on how to protect animals that face extinction.

F In a word, I believe the benefits of zoos are more prominent.

1 Some people think that using animals for experimental purposes is cruel, but other people think it is necessary to do this for the development of science. Discuss both views and give your opinion.

2 There is no need to have animals as food or use animal products. Do you agree or disagree?

3 Some people think keeping animals in zoos is cruel and zoos should be closed. However, other people think zoos can help protect various kinds of animals. Discuss both views and give your opinion.

3 题型讲解

3.1 动植物类话题

雅思写作大作文的主体段通常包含以下几个部分：

idea	观点
explanation	解释观点
further explanation / example	进一步解释或举例
detail / result of the example	细节或举例的结果
additional information	补充信息
transition	转折
comparison	对比
conclusion	结论

Tips

在雅思写作大作文的主体段中，“观点”“解释观点”“结论”是必备项。同时，主体段也可能包括“进一步解释或举例”“细节或举例的结果”“补充信息”“转折”“对比”等内容，但不是必备项，且出现顺序可以根据实际情况灵活调整。

请以下面的题目为例，学习大作文主体段的写作。

Far too little has been done to prevent animals and plants from dying out, although people have been aware of this problem for a long time. Why do people do so little about it? Give your suggestions on how to solve this problem.

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

❶ 题型分析

该题目为“原因 + 建议”类题型。中心话题为：人类没有采取足够的措施阻止动植物灭亡。写作时要分析该问题产生的原因，并提出解决问题的建议。

❷ 段落组织

主体段1 原因

idea	Clearly, the main reason is that the practices of **wildlife protection** are likely to cause a fall in business profits.
explanation	Because the cost of **waste disposal** is regarded as a reduction of their profits, factories might dump their waste into rivers without waste disposal.
further explanation	The **chemical waste** produced by factories and the **waste water** dumped into rivers may directly lead to the death of many animals and plants.
additional information	Factories will develop at the cost of animals and plants.
conclusion	It is difficult for those business owners to take measures to prevent animals and plants from dying out.
观点	显然，主要原因是保护野生生物的做法可能导致企业利润的下降。
解释观点	因为处理废弃物的成本被看作是对利润的削减，工厂可能会把自己未作处理的废弃物排入河流。
进一步解释	工厂产生的化学废料和排入河流的废水可能直接导致许多动植物的死亡。
补充信息	工厂会为了发展而牺牲动植物的生命。
结论	要企业主去采取措施阻止动植物灭绝很难。

主体段2 建议

idea	In order to **tackle this issue effectively**, the government should **make laws** and **strictly supervise** the production of **harmful substances**.
explanation	This will force the relevant industries to **come up with innovative solutions** to reduce waste.
further explanation	Otherwise, they will find they have to pay a price higher than the profits they make.
additional information	The government should also make people realise that the factory waste is fatal to wildlife.
conclusion	We humans should take measures to protect the wildlife.

观点	为了有效地解决这个问题，政府应该制定法律，严格监控有害物质的产生。
解释观点	这会促使相关行业提出创新的解决方案来减少废料。
进一步解释	否则，他们将发现自己必须付出比所得利润更高的代价。
补充信息	政府也要让人们意识到工厂的废弃物对野生生物有致命的危险。
结论	人类应该采取措施，保护野生生物。

练习 **请根据题目，判断所给范文的两个主体段中句子的作用。**

Human activities have a negative effect on plant and animal species. Some people think it is too late to do anything about this problem. Others believe that effective measures should be taken to improve this situation. Discuss both views and give your opinion.

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

主体段1 观点1

Some believe that our planet is on the verge of breaking down, so it is useless to take any rescue operations.	1 _____
They believe that in order to meet human needs, the damage to the natural environment is an inevitable result.	2 _____
The difference only lies in when this will occur and how bad it could be.	3 _____
Apparently, recent years have seen a sharp increase in the frequency of events such as hurricanes and floods.	4 _____
Some just blame this on global warming and climate change, which they think are by no means possible to be prevented.	5 _____

主体段2 观点2

Others argue that there is still time for us to do something to avoid a worse situation.	6 _____
They argue that it's never too late to preserve the biological diversity since we depend so heavily on the environment we live in.	7 _____
For instance, every country should follow the international agreement on controlling greenhouse gas emissions.	8 _____
This will slow down the global warming and earn us time to come up with effective solutions.	9 _____
It is still possible to address this problem before it develops into a ruinous climate disaster.	10 _____

3.2 饼状图

饼状图写作有以下几种主体段布局方式：

❶ 没有时间变化的分段方式

	按对比分段	按占比大小分段	按图表分段
主体段1	相似性	占比最大的	图1
主体段2	不同点	占比较小的	图2

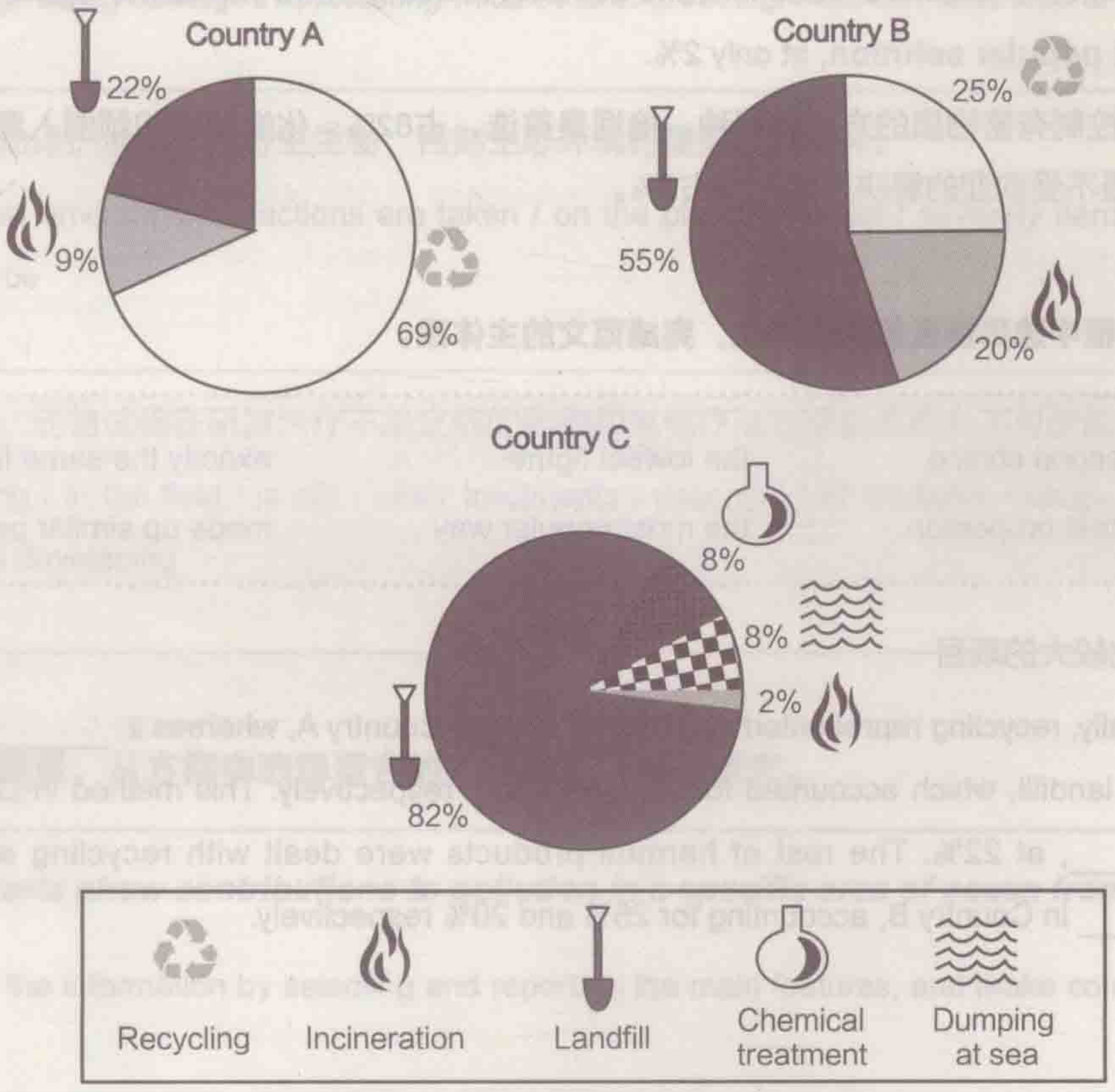
❷ 有时间变化的分段方式

	按占比变化大小分段	按图表分段
主体段1	占比变化较大的	图1
主体段2	占比变化较小的	图2

请以下面的范文为例，学习饼状图写作的分段方式和表示比较的表达。

The pie charts below show how dangerous waste products were dealt with in three countries.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.



* Incineration: a way of destroying something by fire

开头段

The three pie charts give information about the percentages of different measures of dealing with dangerous waste products in Country A, Country B, and Country C. It is clear that Country A recycled most of the dangerous waste products, whereas Countries B and C preferred to bury them.

这三个饼状图给出了三个国家处理危险废弃物的不同方法所占的百分比。很明显，国家A回收利用了大部分的危险废弃物，而国家B和C则更倾向于掩埋它们。

主体段1 有相似性的主体（Countries A and B）

Countries A and B **showed a similarity** by using three ways in dealing with dangerous waste products. In Country A, recycling was **the preferable way**, accounting for 69%, while the figures for the other two approaches, landfill and incineration, **were relatively lower**. Specifically, landfill made up 22%, while only 9% of waste products were tackled by incineration. In Country B, **most of the dangerous waste products** were tackled by landfill, at 55%, while the figures for recycling and incineration were standing at 25% and 20% respectively.

国家A和B在处理危险废弃物方面有相似之处，都使用了三种方法。在国家A，回收是更受欢迎的方法，占69%；而其他两种方法，掩埋和焚烧的比例则相对较低。具体来说，地下掩埋垃圾的比例占22%，而焚烧处理的垃圾仅占9%。在国家B，大部分的危险废弃物都是通过地下掩埋处理的，占55%；而回收和焚烧的比例分别为25%和20%。

主体段2 有区别的主体（Country C）

Meanwhile, there were four ways to control harmful materials in Country C. Landfill was **the top choice**, with a percentage of 82%. Chemical treatment and dumping at sea **shared the same figure of** 8%. Incineration was **the least popular solution**, at only 2%.

同时，国家C控制有害物质的方法有四种。掩埋是首选，占82%；化学处理和倾倒入海的比例相同，都是8%；焚烧是最不受欢迎的解决方案，只占2%。

练习 请从方框中选择适合的表达填空，完成范文的主体段。

as the second choice	the lowest figure	exactly the same figure
the greatest proportion	the most popular way	made up similar percentages

主体段1 占比较大的项目

More specifically, recycling represented 1 _____ in Country A, whereas 2 _____ in Countries B and C was landfill, which accounted for 55% and 82% respectively. This method in Country A was listed 3 _____, at 22%. The rest of harmful products were dealt with recycling and burning, which 4 _____ in Country B, accounting for 25% and 20% respectively.

主体段2 占比较小的项目

In Country A, 5 _____ for people to control harmful materials went to incineration, at 9%. Meanwhile, Country C burned only 2% of their dangerous garbage. The other two methods adopted by Country C were chemical treatment and dumping at sea, which had 6 _____ of 8%.

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据中文提示，重新排列所给句子组成部分，完成句子。

1 动物是否应该被养在动物园里一直是一个有争议的问题。

should be kept in zoos / whether / a disputed issue / has long been / animals

_____

2 濒危物种生活的区域正在以惊人的速度退化。

endangered species / areas / are / inhabited by / degrading / at a tremendous pace

_____

3 近几十年来，人们对野生生物保护的态度变得更加坚决和迫切。

wildlife protection / in recent decades / more insistent and urgent / attitudes towards / have become

_____

4 保护野生生物在防止食物链免受破坏方面具有重大意义。

in preventing / being damaged / protecting wildlife / is of great significance / food chains from

_____

5 除非采取行动保护地球上的野生生物，否则生态环境将遭到严重破坏。

the ecological environment / actions are taken / on the planet / unless / severely damaged / to preserve wildlife / will be

_____

6 在医学领域，动物试验在研发治疗不治之症的药物和其他疗法方面仍然是必不可少的。

animal testing / in the field / is still / other treatments / essential / of medicine / drugs and / for incurable diseases / in developing

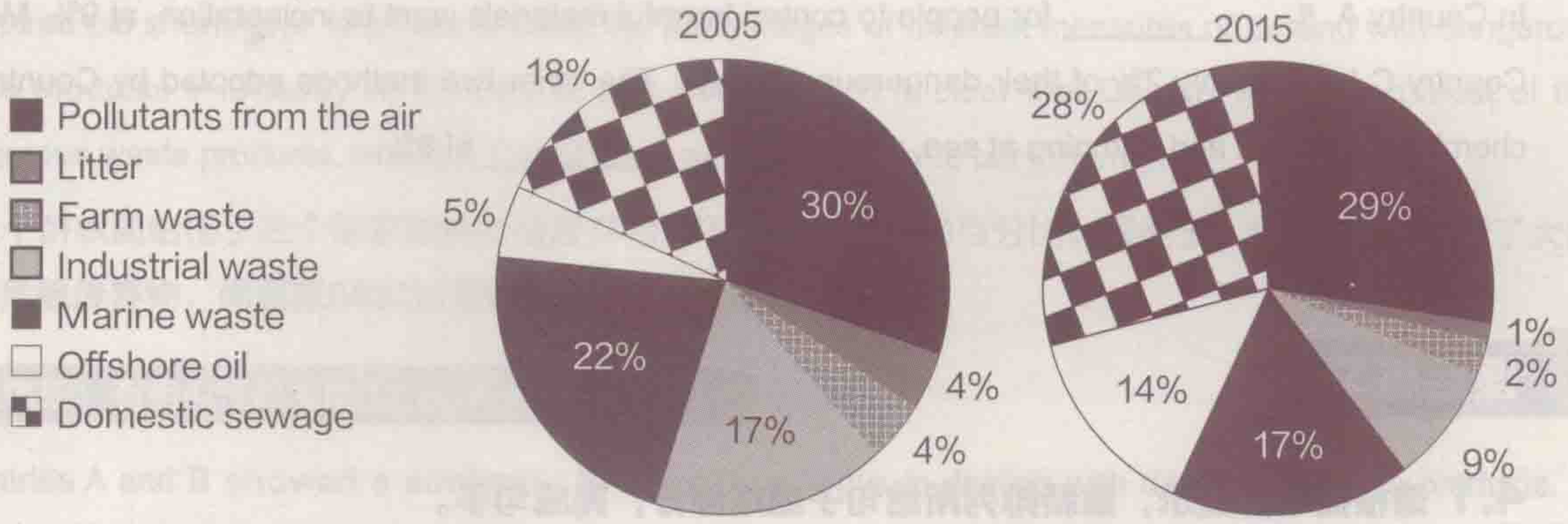
_____

4.2 请根据题目，从方框中选择适合的表达填空，完成范文。

The pie charts show contributions to pollution in a specific area of ocean from 2005 to 2015.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Pollution entering a particular part of ocean from 2005 to 2015



underwent a change	declined to 1%
went down rapidly	nearly the same figure
saw a sharp rise	dropped
experienced	made up the highest percentage
halved	the largest contributor
tripling its percentage	a relatively big change

开头段

The pie charts compare the proportions of different pollution sources in a specific area of ocean from 2005 to 2015. Overall, it can be seen that pollutants from the air 1 _____ of pollution in both years. The smallest contributor was litter in 2015. Litter as well as farm waste took up the smallest proportion in 2005.

主体段1 增加的项目

For the details, the data for pollution from domestic sewage experienced 2 _____, with an increase of 10%, from 18% in 2005 to 28% in 2015. The percentage of pollutants from the air had 3 _____ in 2015 compared with that in 2005, being 4 _____. Similarly, the offshore oil 5 _____ in its contribution in 2015, nearly 6 _____ in 2005.

主体段2 减少的项目

On the other hand, the rest categories 7 _____ a decrease in different levels. The percentage of industrial waste entering the ocean 8 _____ from 17% in 2005 to 9% in 2015. Likewise, the proportions of marine waste and litter 9 _____ of 5% and 3% respectively. In 2015, the marine waste declined to 17% and the litter 10 _____. Compared to 10 years ago, the data for farm waste was 11 _____, only taking up 2% in 2015. The figure for pollutants from the air in this ocean 12 _____ by only 1%, from 30% in 2005 to 29% in 2015.

Unit 10 Across the Universe

Listening

1 词汇基础

1.1 请将单词与对应的英文释义相匹配。

1 astronaut	A an important official job or task that a person or group of people is given to do
2 orbit	B a person whose job involves travelling and working in a spacecraft
3 pump	C a curved path followed by an object as it moves around a planet, star, moon, etc
4 mission	D a large system of stars
5 galaxy	E the force that attracts objects in space towards each other
6 gravity	F a machine that is used to force liquid or air into or out of something

1.2 请选出画线词的同义表达。

1 Travelling to space will have a big impact on astronauts' physical condition.

A impression　　B danger　　C effect

2 The research can only be conducted in the space environment.

A arranged　　B carried out　　C directed

3 The planet is first discovered by Dr Miller.

A identified　　B created　　C invented

4 Artificial intelligence actually can help humans explore the universe.

A Instinctive　　B Man-made　　C Natural

5 Galileo is a renowned scientist in the history of astronomy.

A great　　B wise　　C famous

6 The long space journey can make astronauts depressed.

A happy　　B frustrated　　C calm

1.3 请思考太空探索的利弊，然后听一段录音，试着总结录音中提到的利弊。

Advantage(s): _____

Disadvantage(s): _____

1.4 请从方框中选择适当的单词或短语，并以其正确形式填入空白处，然后听录音确定你的答案。

junk	explode	Pacific Ocean	pear	satellite

Reporter: When it was announced by NASA that an old 1 _____ weighing 6,000 kilogrammes was flying towards the Earth, many people were worried. Everyone knew it would fall, but nobody knew where. Finally, it fell into the 2 _____. But this made us ask: How much 3 _____ actually exists in space?

Dr Johnson: Well, we call it orbital debris. Most of it crashes into each other or 4 _____.

Reporter: NASA estimates that there are about 13,000 large fragments, which are about the size of a 5 _____ or an orange. And all of them orbit the Earth in a giant debris cloud. There's an image of this debris cloud on the screen right here.

场景词汇

astronomy /əˈstrɒnəmi/ *n.* 天文学

astronaut /ˈæstrənɔːt/ *n.* 宇航员

bone /bəʊn/ *n.* 骨

conduct /kənˈdʌkt/ *v.* 实施

discover /dɪˈskʌvə(r)/ *v.* 发现

galaxy /ˈgæləksi/ *n.* 星系

gravity /ˈgrævəti/ *n.* 重力

Jupiter /ˈdʒuːpɪtə(r)/ *n.* 木星

telescope /ˈtelɪskəʊp/ *n.* 望远镜

revolution /ˌrevəˈluːʃn/ *n.* 革命

rocket /ˈrɒkɪt/ *n.* 火箭

pioneer /ˌpaɪəˈnɪə(r)/ *n.* 先驱者

pump /pʌmp/ *n.* 泵 *v.* 抽取

mission /ˈmɪʃn/ *n.* 任务

impact /ˈɪmpækt/ *n.* 影响

orbit /ˈɔːbɪt/ *n.* 轨道 *v.* 绕轨道运行

universe /ˈjuːnɪvɜːs/ *n.* 宇宙

satellite /ˈsætəlaɪt/ *n.* 卫星

spaceship /ˈspeɪsʃɪp/ *n.* 宇宙飞船

NASA /ˈnæsə/ *n.* 美国国家航空航天局

renowned /rɪˈnaʊnd / *adj.* 知名的

artificial /ˌɑːtɪˈfɪʃl/ *adj.* 人工的

depressed /dɪˈprest/ *adj.* 沮丧的

distant /ˈdɪstənt/ *adj.* 遥远的

associate...with... 把……与……联系起来

black hole 黑洞

International Space Station 国际空间站

2 能力培养

2.1 地图题注意事项

❶ 地图题通常有两种具体考查形式：填空题和选择题。在该题型中，录音与题目的顺序是一致的，所以读题时要先找准起点，然后按照题目顺序依次听录音。做选择题时，可以先在地图上标记所听到的答案，之后再将题目与答案相匹配。

❷ 如果地图上没有给出方向，可以自行标出top，bottom，left，right等方位。

❸ 出现倒装句时要留心。在该题型中，倒装句的一般形式是：位置 + 动词 + 建筑名称。如：

In the centre of the lake stands a pavilion. 湖的中央有一个亭子。

❹ 最后誊写答案时，要检查题目的顺序，注意不要将答案写错位置。

2.2 流程图题注意事项

❶ 我们在第八单元已经学过，流程图题通常有选择题和填空题两种考查形式。做选择题读题时要尽可能理解选项的意思，时间允许的情况下可以适当翻译，因为在录音中很可能会出现同义替换。

❷ 流程图题也遵循顺序原则，所以做题时不要跳题，按照顺序依次作答。

❸ 注意听信号词，了解文章结构，定位信息并确定答案。

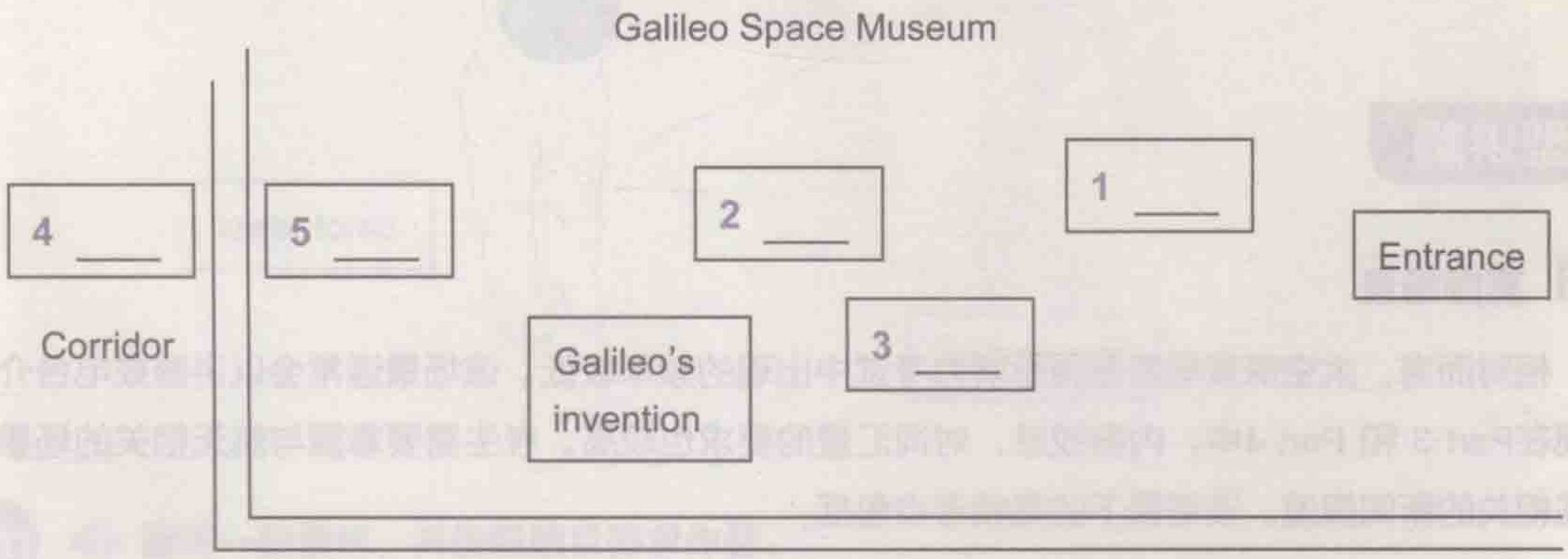
❹ 如果题目已经错过，不要纠结，迅速定位至下一题的答案。

2.3 巩固练习

练习1 请根据题目，判断录音可能会按照什么顺序介绍地图，起点在哪里。

Label the map below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.*



练习2 请翻译题目中的已知信息，并从方框中选择可以填入空白处的答案。

surface　Earth　silver　large　visible　grow　shrinking　fully

Phases of the Moon

New Moon: The Sun and the Moon are aligned on the same side of the 1 _____.

↓

Waxing Crescent Moon: The Moon appears increasingly 2 _____.

↓

First Quarter Moon: Only half of the Moon is 3 _____ for the first half of the evening.

↓

Waxing Gibbous Moon: The Moon appears to 4 _____ into a gibbous shape.

↓

Full Moon: The Moon appears to be 5 _____ illuminated.

↓

Waning Gibbous Moon: We see a steadily 6 _____ shape of the Moon.

↓

Third Quarter Moon: We see exactly half the sunlit 7 _____ of the Moon in the early morning and daytime sky.

↓

Waning Crescent Moon: We see a waning 8 _____ until the moment when the Moon aligns with the Sun again.

3 题型讲解

3.1 高频场景

相对而言，太空探索场景在雅思听力考试中出现的频率较低。该场景通常会以讲座或电台介绍的形式出现在Part 3 和 Part 4中，内容较难，对词汇量的要求也较高。考生需要掌握与航天相关的场景词汇，并关注相关的新闻报道。该场景下的高频考点包括：

- NASA的相关新闻
- 航天新发现
- 卫星的应用
- 宇宙理论
- 航天科技的发展

3.2 题型演练

练习1 **请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。**

Complete the notes below.

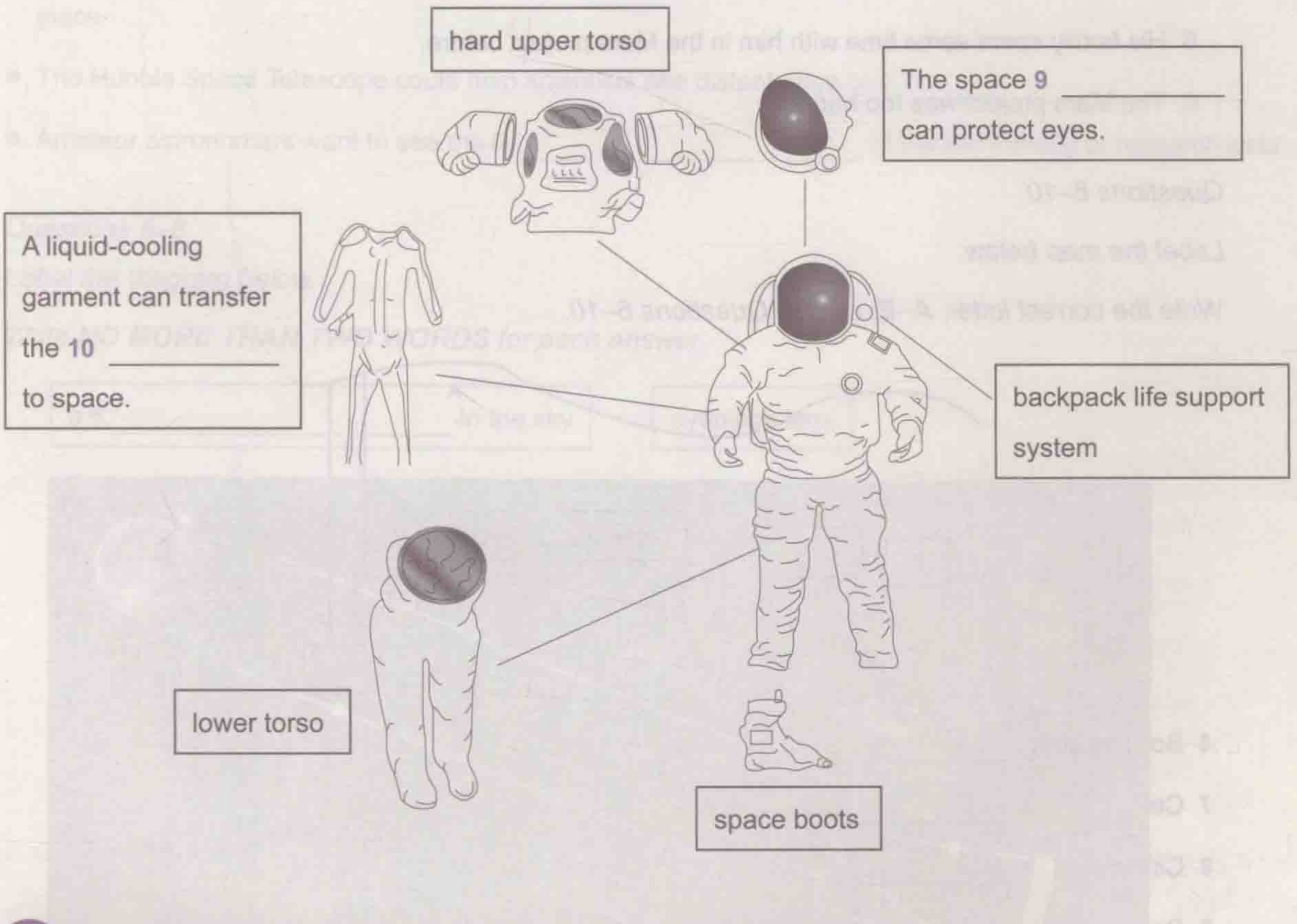
*Write **ONE WORD ONLY** for each answer.*

The effects of space travel on humans

The International Space Station performs many significant 1 _____.

For example, there is research on the 2 _____ of space travel on the human body.

- The distribution of 3 _____ can be affected by a low-gravity environment. People can be sick like they are 4 _____ in a storm.
- 5 _____ will also be damaged in the weightless environment, so it is necessary to 6 _____ in space stations.
- 7 _____ from space is also dangerous. It can be harmful to 8 _____ system.



练习2 **请听一段录音，并按照题目要求作答。**

Questions 1–5

*Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B** or **C**.*

1 How long did a few scientists decide to live on Mars time?

A three months　　B four months　　C half a year

2 The sleep problem could lead to the following results EXCEPT

A unhealthy mind state. B difficulty in work. C uncontrolled *Curiosity Rover*.

3 What can we learn about Mars time?

A It takes Mars more time to complete a full rotation than the Earth.

B It takes Mars less time to complete a full rotation than the Earth.

C Mars time is the same as Earth time.

4 Why cannot some scientists work well on Mars time?

A Because they could not see their families for quite a long time.

B Because they had too much work.

C Because they had to work for quite a long time.

5 What surprised the head scientist?

A His family was not willing to see him.

B His family spent some time with him in the Mars project centre.

C The Mars project was too boring.

Questions 6–10

Label the map below.

*Write the correct letter, **A–E**, next to Questions 6–10.*



6 Bowling alley _____

7 Café _____

8 Cinema _____

9 Sauna _____

10 Beach _____

4 课后练习

4.1

练习1 **请先读题，圈出题目中的关键词，并翻译出来。**

Questions 1–5

Complete the notes below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.*

Telescope

- To some degree, telescopes began the 1 _____.
- Galileo was an astronomer to improve telescopes and enable 2 _____ to get a closer look at objects in the sky.
- John William Draper produced a Moon's 3 _____ in black and white in the first place.
- The Hubble Space Telescope could help scientists see distant stars or 4 _____.
- Amateur astronomers want to see the 5 _____ of the sky instead of research data.

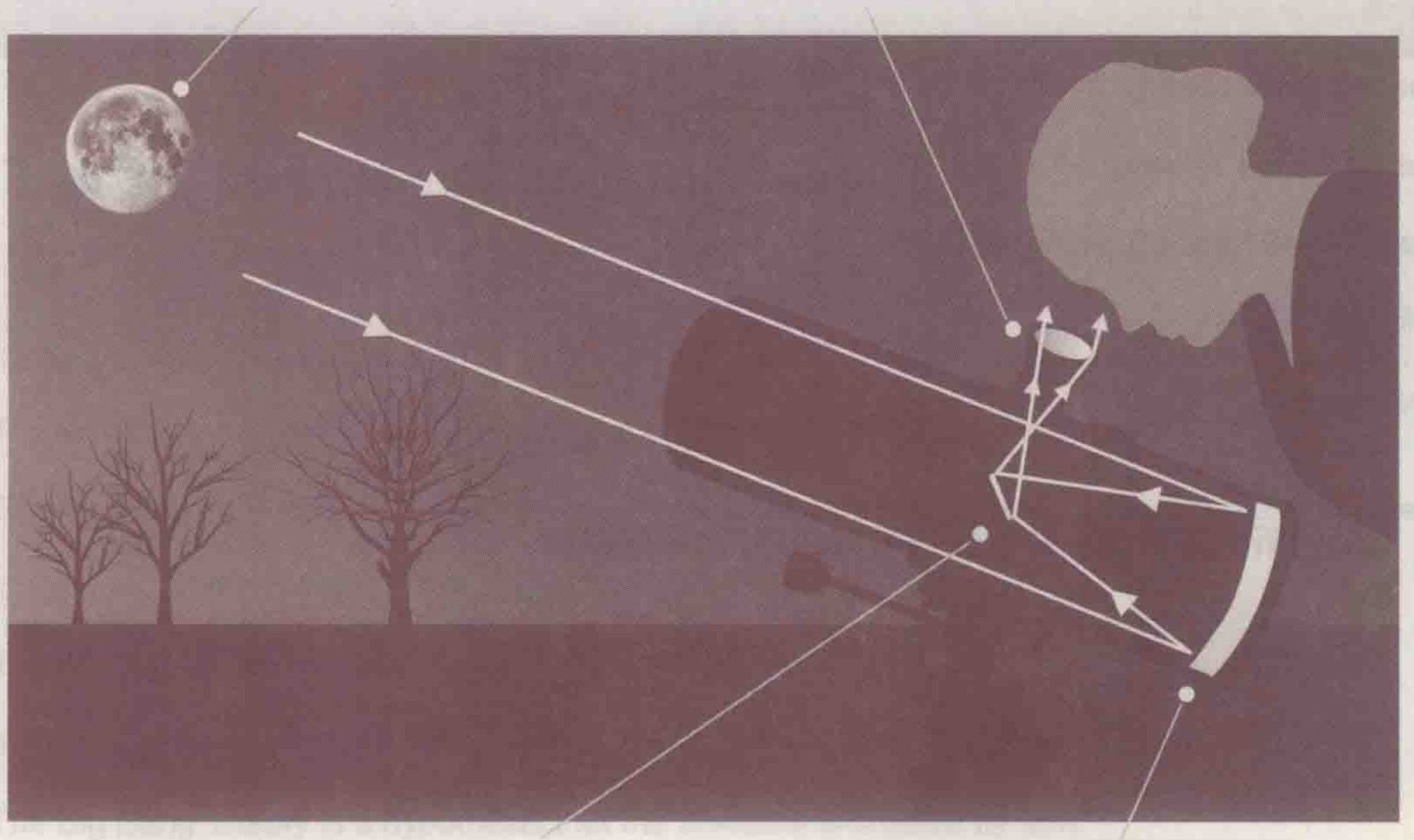
Questions 6–8

Label the diagram below.

*Write **NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS** for each answer.*

a 6 _____ in the sky

eyepiece lens



A 8 _____ directs the light to the eyepiece lens.

The curved mirror helps collect and 7 _____.

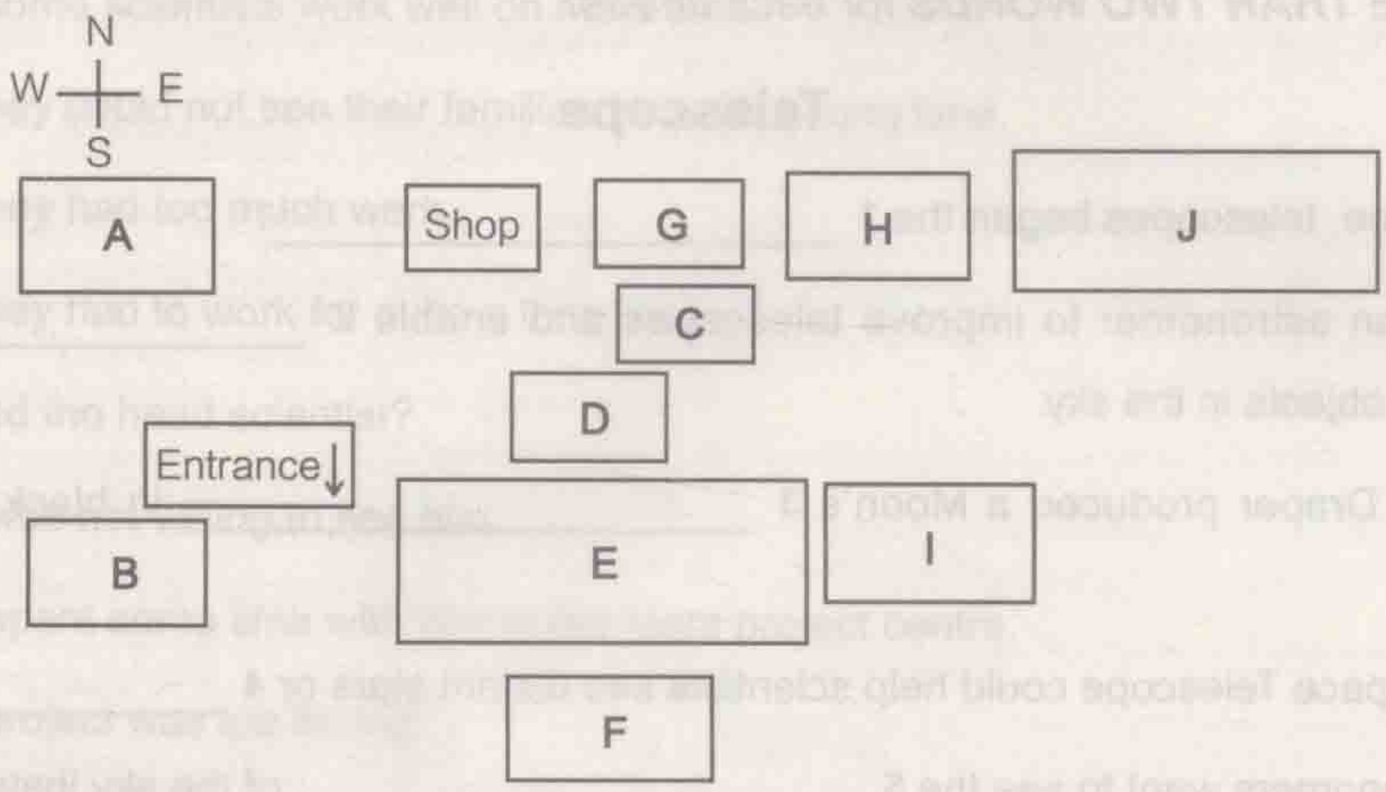
练习2 请听一段录音，并按照要求完成练习1中的题目。

4.2

练习1 请根据题目，判断录音可能会按照什么顺序介绍地图，起点在哪里。

Label the map below.

*Write the correct letter, **A**–**J**, next to Questions 1–10.*



1 Information Centre _____

2 Astronaut Centre _____

3 Universe Theatre _____

4 Journey to Mars _____

5 Entrance to bus tour _____

6 Space Shuttle Centre _____

7 Hubble Space Telescope Theatre _____

8 International Space Station Gallery _____

9 Toilet _____

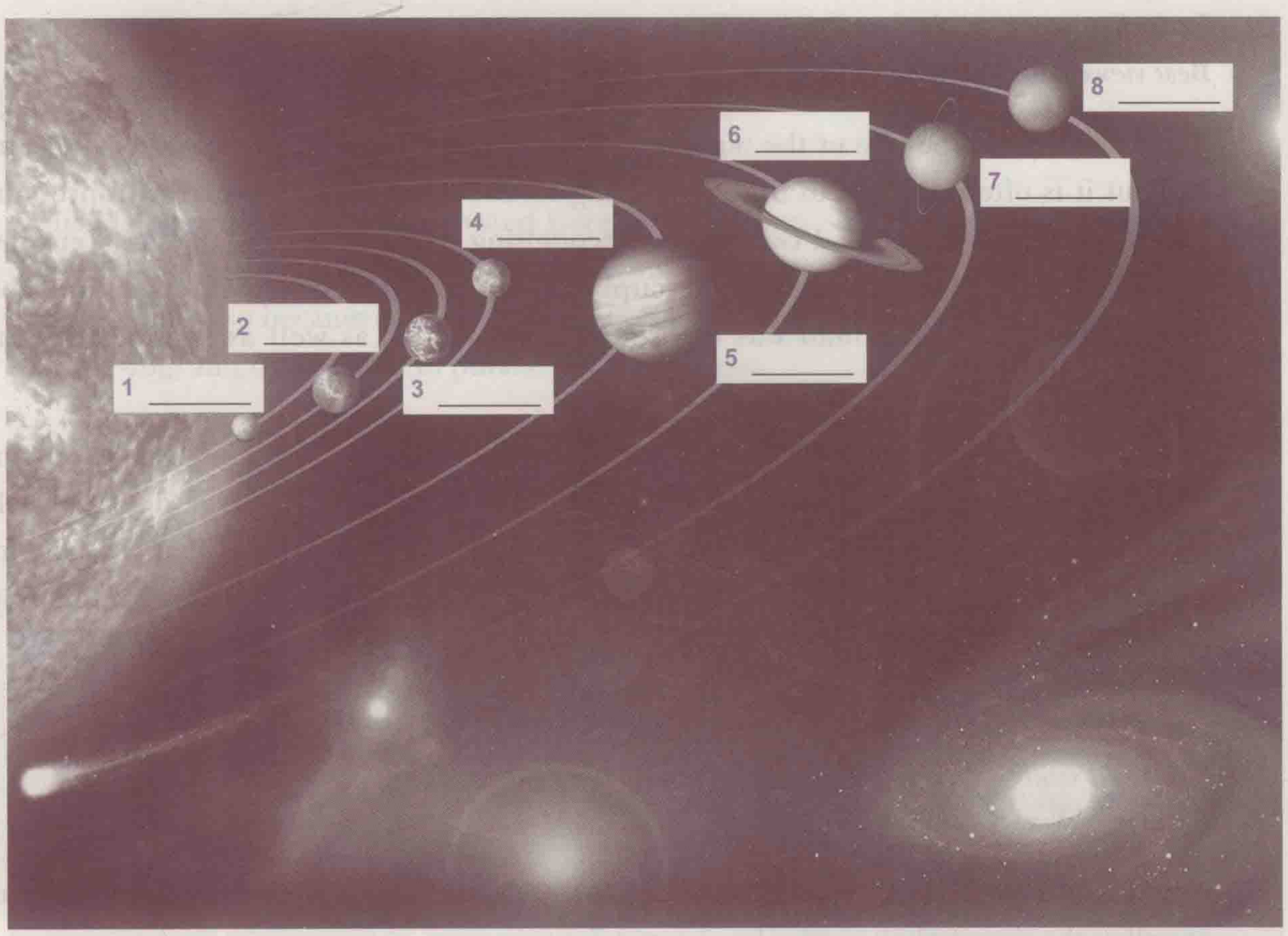
10 Restaurant _____

练习2 请听一段录音，并按照要求完成练习1中的题目。

Reading

1 词汇基础

1.1 请在图片的相应位置写出太阳系八大行星的英文名称，可以借助词典来寻找答案。



1.2 请从方框中选择合适的单词，并以其正确形式填入空白处。

crash	attract	transmit	form	explode

1 The satellite completed its last mission and ended up _____ into the Sun.

2 Gravity is the force that _____ two bodies towards each other, and also the one that causes apples to fall down to the ground.

3 The radio everyone listens to is working based on the signals _____ from satellites.

4 All the dust, ice and rocks together _____ the gigantic ring surrounding Saturn.

5 The Big Bang Theory is a hypothesis that the universe is created by a(n) _____.

1.3 请阅读文章，从文中选取单词填入文后表格中的空白处，每空一词。

Four Important Constellations

1. Aquarius

Latin for 'water carrier' or 'cup carrier'
Best viewed in: October

Aquarius may well be one of the biggest, best-known, and oldest named constellations in the sky, but it is often difficult to find. According to Greek mythology, Aquarius represented a handsome young man called Ganymede. Recognising the youth's gifts, the god Zeus invited him to Mount Olympus to act as the cupbearer of the ancient Greek gods, and, for his dedication, the young man was offered eternal youth, as well as immortality in the constellation.

Despite its large size, Aquarius doesn't possess any defining features, nor does it contain any bright stars. Aquarius' right arm is pointing to the right, with the large downward shape representing water flowing from a vase and his right leg. The formation that is visible in the night sky does not represent the entire constellation, and it is impossible to see it in a brightly lit urban environment.

2. Aquila

Latin for 'eagle'
Best viewed in: September

According to the ancient Greeks, Aquila was the eagle that took Ganymede to Mount Olympus, as well as the thunderbolt carrier for the god Zeus.

Aquila is a constellation within the Milky Way, and its major star, Altair, is clearly visible in the night sky. Towards the top of Aquila, you will note an inverted V-shaped formation, the point of which is where Altair is located. The V represents the head and wings of an eagle, and the line descending from it symbolises the eagle's body. During summer months, this constellation is shining in the night sky.

3. Aries

Latin for 'ram'
Best viewed in: December

Aries is another constellation embedded in Greek mythology and is perhaps best known as the ram. Aries was sheared, according to the myth, and its fleece became what is known as the Golden Fleece, which is a symbol of kingship and power. The concept was incorporated in the story of Jason and the Argonauts, in which Jason journeyed in search of the fleece so that he could lay claim to the throne. With the assistance from Medea, who later married him, Jason

overcame a series of obstacles to complete the task. This tale is one of the most enduring Greek legends.

Aries is made up of about four or five visible stars, which form a line from the ram's head down to its back. The head is actually the bottom part of the constellation. The largest star of Aries you can see in the night sky is Hamal, which is classified as an orange giant.

4. Canis Major

Latin for 'greater dog'
Best viewed in: February

Canis Major symbolises the renowned Greek dog Laelaps. There are a few stories about its origin. The most common one is that Laelaps was so fast that Zeus elevated it to the sky. Orion, a hunter, who also became a major constellation after death, was said to have kept Laelaps as a hunting dog, and trained him to pursue the bull Taurus.

The brightest star in the night sky, Sirius, is part of Canis Major. According to the folklore, the first appearance of Canis Major in the dawn sky can be observed during summer, announcing the coming of 'the dog days' (i.e. the hottest period of the year). At night, it seems to resemble a stick figure, with Sirius at the top, and another bright star, Adhara, at the bottom.

Constellations	Best viewing time	Figures in Greek mythology	Features
Aquarius	October	A young man named Ganymede invited by Zeus to serve as a 1 _____, thus entitled to eternal youth and immortality	Right arm pointing to the right; large lower part representing water flowing from a 2 _____ and his right leg
Aquila	September	The eagle that serves as the carrier of 3 _____ for Zeus and sends Ganymede to Mount Olympus	Inverted V-shape representing the eagle's head and 4 _____; downward line being the eagle's body
Aries	December	The ram whose wool is the famous Golden Fleece in the legend, representing 5 _____ and power	Four or five stars making up the 6 _____ from the ram's head down to the back
Canis Major	February	The famous Greek dog Laelaps elevated to the sky by Zeus and recognised as the 7 _____ dog of Orion	A 8 _____ figure with two bright stars — Sirius at the top and Adhara at the bottom

1.4 请画出文章中的生词和短语，通过词典确认它们的含义，并写下来。

_____

_____

主题词汇

constellation /ˌkɒnstə'leɪʃn/ *n.* 星座
celestial body 天体
nebula /'nebjələ/ *n.* 星云
comet /'kɒmɪt/ *n.* 彗星
asteroid /'æstərɔɪd/ *n.* 小行星
meteor /'mi:tiə(r)/ *n.* 流星
Mercury /'mɜ:kjəri/ *n.* 水星
Venus /'vi:nəs/ *n.* 金星
Mars /mɑ:z/ *n.* 火星
Jupiter /'dʒu:pɪtə(r)/ *n.* 木星
Saturn /'sætɜ:n/ *n.* 土星
Uranus /'jʊərənəs/ *n.* 天王星
Neptune /'neptju:n/ *n.* 海王星
Pluto /'plu:təʊ/ *n.* 冥王星
phase /feɪz/ *n.* 月相
debris /'debri:/ *n.* 碎片，残骸
shatter /'ʃætə(r)/ *v.* （使）粉碎
crater /'kreɪtə(r)/ *n.* 坑
collision /kə'lɪʒn/ *n.* 碰撞
capsule /'kæpsju:l/ *n.* （航天器的）太空舱
space station 空间站
space shuttle 航天飞机

2 能力培养

小结

在前面四个单元，我们学习了在篇章阅读过程中碰到生词、长句和难句时的解决方法。在第六和第七单元，我们学习了以下应对生词的策略：

1 根据上下文信息判断单词的含义，如通过具有释义、复述、举例或列举等功能的句子推测生词的含义；

2 根据生词的词根或词缀猜测单词的大概含义；

3 通过句子中的逻辑关系和单词的词性判断生词的含义；

4 忽略无关紧要的生词，关注出现频率较高的生词。

在第八和第九单元，我们学习了阅读篇章中常见的转折、对比与比较、顺承、递进、因果、条件等各种逻辑关系，并了解了每种逻辑关系通常所对应的信号词。

在本单元，我们将通过练习综合运用前面学到的猜词策略、逻辑关系及其对应的信号词。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The Role of Sunspots and Solar Wind in Climate Change

Do sunspots and solar wind have more impact on climate change than human activities?

Sunspots are storms on the surface of the Sun, characterised by strong magnetic activity. These storms contain solar flares and fiery gassy ejections that emerge from the Sun's corona. It is commonly held that the number of spots on the Sun goes through a certain cycle, achieving a peak about every 11 years. This is referred to as solar maximum. According to some research, the total amount of sunspot activity has increased twofold during the last 100 years, with the result of a more brightly glowing Sun.

According to NASA's Marshall Space Flight Centre, solar wind consists of magnetised plasma flares and in some cases relates to sunspots. Solar wind starts from the Sun and has an effect on galactic rays that can lead to a series of atmospheric phenomena on the Earth, including cloud cover. Nonetheless, it is still unclear how much impact these phenomena actually have on the Earth and more research needs to be done.

Those who doubt human activities' contribution to climate change attribute global warming to the natural changes in the Sun's output caused by sunspots and solar wind. It is claimed that the rise in sunspot activity is the direct cause of the rising global temperature and the increased attempts to reduce carbon emissions are pointless to reduce the global temperature. They argue further that the global economy will suffer due to these efforts.

According to Joerg Knipprath, a law school professor and conservative critic of climate change science, 'Variations in solar energy output have far more effect on the Earth's climate than the soccer mums driving SUVs.' He argues that reasonable people would regard this as a given fact, especially when taking the relatively limited impact of human activities into account. However, in his view, people who support the claim that humans boosted the global warming have an unbounded arrogance that people are able to control the nature and that human activities can permanently damage the planet, as well as saving it.

There is a consensus among climate scientists that sunspots and solar wind do contribute to climate change, but most regard the effects as minimal in comparison to human activities. In their eyes, the Earth's warming is primarily due to emissions from industrial activities and other things, and they have thousands of peer-reviewed studies to support their claims.

Peter Foukal, a Massachusetts-based researcher who has tracked sunspot intensities from different spots around the world, believes that such solar phenomena have minimal impact on global warming and planetary conditions. Nevertheless, the UN has recently formed a group with the specific purpose of analysing these trends.

Satirically, in order to know if phenomena like sunspots and solar wind have a great impact on climate change, we first need to lower carbon emissions. Only then will we be able to see to what extent changes in the Sun impact the Earth. That is the only way in which researchers can measure how much impact the nature has on the Earth's climate.

1 请在文中画出解释下列单词或短语的句子，试着写出它们的中文释义，并通过词典确认答案。

1) sunspot _____

2) solar maximum _____

3) solar wind _____

2 请根据词根和词缀判断下列单词的词性和含义。

	词性	含义
1) magnetised	_____	_____
2) atmospheric	_____	_____
3) unbounded	_____	_____
4) emission	_____	_____
5) planetary	_____	_____

3 请写出文中出现的逻辑信号词。

_____

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The Invention of the Telescope

About four centuries ago, tales emerged from the Netherlands describing the invention of a device that featured twin lenses now commonly known as the telescope. However, the telescope first came into being as a low-power spyglass. Later it turned into a scientific instrument with high optical magnification precision which enabled viewers to observe the planets and the solar system. It is one of the most significant inventions. So much of what we understand about the universe today was made possible by the telescope.

Who invented the telescope?

The telescope was a concept that had been developing in the minds of scientists for a long time, as rumours about both reflective and refractive optical devices that could focus on distant objects had already been discussed in scientific circles for centuries. Nevertheless, most of these discussions only led to curious fantasies of magical equipment. The first known telescope was invented by a Dutch eyeglass maker called Hans Lippershey. He was born in the 16th century in

Wesel, Germany and was the first person to patent something resembling a modern telescope. Lippershey's telescope first appeared in 1608, featuring a concave lens with a convex objective lens.

Numerous stories abound as to how Hans Lippershey got the idea for designing the telescope. Lippershey lived in the same town as Zachariah Jensen, a rival eyeglass maker who others at the time claimed had his design stolen by Lippershey. Nonetheless, there is minimal evidence to suggest this is the case, so Lippershey is regarded as the inventor of the telescope, mainly because of his patent application. The origins of the invention are fascinating, as some claimed that Lippershey witnessed two children holding up two lenses in his shop. Afterwards, Lippershey noticed a weather vane in the distance that appeared much closer than it really was, as a result of its diffraction through the lenses. This, supposedly, was what gave him the idea for his invention. It wasn't long after Lippershey secured his patent that another eyeglass maker in the locality sought another patent for a similar device.

Galileo's contribution to the invention

In the early 1600s, Galileo first learnt about Lippershey's great invention when he was in Italy. In a matter of days, Galileo designed his telescope without even setting his eyes on one. Once Galileo had perfected his initial design, he presented his finished product to the Senate in Venice. Galileo is also considered to be the first person to view the craters and mountains on the Moon by looking through a telescope, as well as the first person to look at the Milky Way with a telescope. He also discovered that Jupiter has its moons and the Sun has sunspots.

Further improvements on the telescope

Almost 60 years after Hans Lippershey invented the first documented telescope, Isaac Newton improved the design of the telescope by making a few additions such as a reflector. Over the following few hundred years, more and more improvements were made to the telescope, up until the present day when we now have some of the most sophisticated technologies known to men. Scientists in Arizona displayed one of the strongest telescopes in the world in 2008, coming up 400 years after the invention of Hans Lippershey's.

1 请根据下列单词的特征及其在文中的位置，判断它们的词性，并推测其含义。

	词性	含义
1) reflective / refractive	_____	_____
2) concave / convex	_____	_____
3) diffraction	_____	_____

2 请画出文中表示顺承关系的信号词。

3 请将方框中对望远镜的发展作出重要贡献的人物按时间顺序排序，并概括他们各自的成就。

A Galileo

B Hans Lippershey

C Isaac Newton

1) _____

2) _____

3) _____

3 题型讲解

小结

在前面的九个单元中，我们分别学习了雅思阅读考试中的匹配题、判断题、选择题和小标题匹配题。匹配题包括特征匹配题、分类匹配题和段落信息配对题三类，而选择题则包括单项选择题和多项选择题两类。这些题型是每场雅思阅读考试必会出现的题型，难度较大，也是造成失分的主要题型。

这些题型不但要求考生具备精准定位信息的能力和对文章主旨大意的理解能力，还需要考生具备正确分析和处理信息的能力。这些题型的难点主要体现在：1) 乱序出题。例如在匹配题和小标题匹配题中，题目信息的顺序与其在文章中出现的顺序并不一致，这对于考生理解题目中的细节信息、返回原文准确定位和掌握同义替换的能力要求更高。2) 干扰项增多。例如在选择题中，考生需要从多个选项中排除错误选项，并找到正确的选项；小标题匹配题中也包含多余的干扰选项；段落信息配对题中，常常出现需要重复选择对应段落的情况；判断题则不仅仅需要判断各项描述的正误，还要准确区分错误信息和未提及的信息。这些情况都在无形中增加了雅思阅读考试的难度，需要考生以更强的英语能力来应对。

任务1 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The passage below has five paragraphs, **A–E**.

1 *Choose the correct heading for each paragraph from the list of headings below.*

List of headings

i The forming process of black holes

ii Features of black holes that can be detected through special equipment

iii The definition of black holes

iv The physical principles by which detecting black holes is possible

v Famous examples of black holes in the universe

vi Different sizes of black holes

vii The value of scientific research into black holes

1) Paragraph A

2) Paragraph B

3) Paragraph C

4) Paragraph D

5) Paragraph E

What Is a Black Hole?

A A black hole is a part of space where the strength of gravity is so great that light cannot escape because matter has been pressed into a tiny space. This process occurs when a star is dying and some black holes occur as a result of the extinction of stars. As light cannot escape from a black hole, a black hole is invisible, but they can be located by advanced instruments incorporated into space telescopes, through which scientists can observe the behaviour of material and stars in proximity to black holes.

B There are three types of black holes and all vary in mass and size. A primordial black hole is the smallest type identified by scientists, who hypothesise that this type of black hole is as small as a single atom but possesses the mass of a large mountain. There are different types of medium-sized black holes, but the 'stellar' black hole is the most common. Its mass can be up to 20 times greater than the mass of the Sun and it has a diametre of approximately 16 kilometres. It is theoretically possible that there are multiple stellar black holes in our galaxy. 'Supermassive' black holes are the largest type and have a mass in excess of the sum total of one million Suns. Current scientific theory states that all major galaxies have a black hole of this type around the centre. At the centre of our own galaxy, the Milky Way, the supermassive black hole is known as Sagittarius A. It has a mass equal to about four million Suns and would fit inside a huge ball that could hold a few million Earths.

C Primordial black holes have existed since the early formation of the universe, emerging around the time of the Big Bang. A stellar black hole occurs when the centre of a gigantic star collapses in upon itself, which then causes something known as a supernova that propels part of the star into space. Scientists believe supermassive black holes are formed during the original formation of their galaxy, while their size is determined by the size and mass of the galaxy they are in.

D Black holes are invisible due to the strength of the gravity dragging the light into their centre. However, the effects of this gravity can be observed by looking at the surrounding stars and gases. By looking at the motion of a star as it moves around a certain point, scientists can determine whether it is moving around a black hole.

E When a black hole and a star are near each other, high-energy light is produced, which can be viewed through specially designed scientific instruments. Sometimes a disk can be formed around the black hole, known as an accretion disk, which occurs when gravity within a black hole pulls off the outer gases of the star. As gases from the accretion disk disappear into the black hole, the gases reach an extremely high temperature and X-ray light emerges in all directions. It is possible to view this X-ray light through NASA telescopes and astronomers can use this information to learn more about the properties of a black hole.

2 *Choose the correct letter, **A**, **B**, **C** or **D**.*

1) Why are black holes invisible?

A Because they are too far from the Earth.

B Because light cannot flee from them.

C Because other objects may be in the way when we observe them.

D Because they move very fast.

2) Which one is NOT among the categories of black holes?

A the primordial black hole

B the primitive black hole

C the stellar black hole

D the supermassive black hole

3) Supermassive black holes are believed to originate

A from the dying planet.

B from the time of the Big Bang.

C after a supernova comes into being.

D when the galaxy is in the forming process.

4) When a black hole and a star approach each other,

A an accretion disk might appear near the black hole.

B no light can be produced.

C the movement that occurs in the black hole can be detected through telescopes.

D it can cause a minor influence upon the Earth.

任务2 请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

The passage below has five paragraphs, **A–E**.

1 *Choose the correct heading for each paragraph from the list of headings below.*

List of headings

i Limitations on the past findings of life-supporting conditions

ii New insights red dwarf stars offer

iii The only planet whose living conditions can be observed at present

iv Specific conditions to support life

v Evidence from the planets outside the Earth

vi Contradictions between recent research and the previous discovery

vii Assumption of the existence of a developed alien civilisation

1) Paragraph A

2) Paragraph B

3) Paragraph C

4) Paragraph D

5) Paragraph E

Alien Life Could Exist on Worlds Overflowing with Water

A Even on undiscovered planets covered with water, there is every possibility that life can survive, according to recent research. It was commonly accepted among researchers for some time that these so-called 'water worlds' would not be able to support life as they would not allow for mineral and gas cycling that maintains the Earth's climate. New research, however, demonstrates that ocean planets may be able to support life for quite a long time after they have formed, but this will vary from planet to planet.

B Over the past 20 years, scientists have come across thousands of these exoplanets, most of which are characterised by their rocky terrain and proximity to the 'habitable zone' of their parent stars, meaning it is possible that water exists somewhere on the planet's surface. Nonetheless, there is some confusion among scientists about what conditions for habitability might look like, as we have no examples of life-support planets except the Earth.

C The best indication of what kind of conditions might support life will come from closely observing our own climate, so that scientists can better determine how planets in general maintain stable conditions for billions of years. This is the time frame required for life to take root, according to the latest research. The temperature of the Earth is increased by the release of greenhouse gases into the atmosphere. And then the Earth cools down when the gases are dissolved into minerals in the crust.

D According to the researchers, there are specific conditions that must be met for water planets to support life. These findings were uncovered after thousands of exoplanet simulations were run to monitor planet formation. Specifically, these planets would need to have a certain level of carbon, which is the main life-supporting element for living creatures on the Earth. The exoplanet would require a high volume of water early in its formation, which would then cause carbon to cycle between the atmosphere and the ocean to stabilise the system. Further, the crust of the exoplanet would need to maintain its original elements and minerals, rather than having them dissolve into the seas while extracting the carbon from the atmosphere. 'This really pushes back against the idea you need an Earth clone — that is, a planet with some land and a shallow ocean,' says lead researcher Edwin Kite, a geophysicist at the University of Chicago.

E Though scientists conducted simulations for planets around stars that resemble the Sun, Kite claims the research points to good news with regard to red dwarf stars, another hotspot to search for life. The reason for this optimism is that the simulation only assumed steady light from a star, which a red dwarf should theoretically be able to provide. Red dwarfs produce considerably less light than the Sun, but if planets are at the correct distance from a star, it is possible that they will have the right conditions for water on their surfaces, which means the conditions for life are there. Even so, these stars are also extremely variable and have the capacity to emit radiation that would be fatal to life on their planets.

2 *Look at the following descriptions and the list of elements below. Match each description with the correct element,* ***A–D****.*

1) the medium for carbon to circulate in the planet to maintain a steady system

2) the steady source of heat that life needs constantly

3) the basic substance that forms life

4) the important part to prevent elements and minerals from running into the sea

List of elements

A carbon

B water

C crust

D light

3 Do the following statements agree with the claims of the writer in the passage?

Write

YES *if the statement agrees with the claims of the writer*

NO *if the statement contradicts the claims of the writer*

NOT GIVEN *if it is impossible to say what the writer thinks about this*

1) Previous conviction was that a water planet is not able to raise life.

2) Scientists have examined several life-supporting planets outside the Earth.

3) According to the research, it takes billions of years for life to settle in a planet.

4) Every galaxy has a star functioning in the same way as the Sun does in the Milky Way galaxy.

5) The light emitted from red dwarfs is inadequate for life to survive.

4 课后练习

请阅读文章，根据要求完成题目。

Why Does the Space Shuttle Need Clear Weather to Launch?

A The launching of a space shuttle requires expertise in both science and engineering, but even with the greatest technicians in the world, organisations like NASA also rely upon weather conditions to get the craft off the ground. NASA has set in place a series of launch weather guidelines that provide assistance during decision-making meetings about the

possible safety issues regarding a launch. Detailed information on weather patterns is submitted by the US Air Force to NASA's Kennedy Space Centre in Florida in the days approaching the commencement of the mission.

B Around nine hours before the launch, the process of preparing the craft for launch begins as NASA technicians fill the orbiter's massive external fuel tank with cryogenic propellant. This takes as long as three hours. Although clear weather is preferable for this kind of task, it is possible to undertake it safely and effectively during cloudy or wet conditions. A delayed fuelling caused by bad weather may also result in the postponement of a launch, but NASA officials usually have enough time to deal with the problem.

C Fuelling will only be cancelled if there are high winds at the launch zone or any threats of lightning. 'Rain doesn't hurt the system, but lightning is not OK,' says NASA spokesman Allard Beutel. 'Lightning is the main concern. More often we get delays or scrubs because of lightning in the area.'

D Lightning is the biggest potential problem posed by thick clouds, as the space shuttle's fuel tanks might carry an electric charge that could attract a bolt of lightning. As the spacecraft passes through the clouds, a lightning might strike the orbiter or the fuel tanks, which will be a complete disaster. However, a lightning bolt that doesn't actually strike the shuttle but passes close by could still damage the electronic circuitry onboard the craft. This will cause problems such as difficulties in piloting the shuttle, running life-support systems, and maintaining contact with the Earth. Indeed, all airliners face this kind of risk, but considering the heights at which space shuttles fly, they are exposed to more dangerous types of clouds.

E Decisions about whether to launch are subject to weather considerations for this reason, and any forecast sent to the space agency usually predicts the worst-case scenario as an added safety precaution. If there is even slight precipitation, the shuttle will not be launched. Nor will it take off if low clouds or high winds are reported at the launch pad or along the flight path. Any lightning strikes on or around the launch pad within a range of 10 nautical miles (about 19 km) in the 30 minutes prior to launch will lead to the suspension of the launch.

F Additionally, if there is a problem with the craft soon after take-off, clear weather is critical if the craft is to return to the ground safely. Similarly, any decision to go ahead with a launch must also take into account the weather conditions at emergency landing sites in the US and overseas. 'Most, but not all, of it has to do with emergency landing in the unlikely event that we have to return here to Kennedy,' Beutel said. 'We have to preserve that as one of the emergency landing options. And that does change things, because you're not just worrying about launch time, but also 20 minutes later when, in theory, you might need to return to the landing site.'

G No matter what contingency plans are put in place, weather forecasts are rarely 100 per cent accurate. As a consequence, NASA officials follow the so-called 'Good Sense Rule', which

means that even if the official information shows that conditions are appropriate for a launch, other potential problems must be reported. It is then up to the director in charge of the launch to decide whether to go ahead with it or not.

Questions 1–5

The passage has seven paragraphs, **A–G**.

Which paragraph contains the following information?

1 The agent who sends detailed weather forecast information to NASA

2 The rule adopted to make the final decision on whether to launch or not

3 The only situation to call off the fuelling of the craft

4 Explanation on the damage lightning could do to the craft

5 The importance of clear weather on emergency landing

Questions 6 and 7

*Choose **TWO** letters, **A–E**.*

Which **TWO** of the explanations are CORRECT about the climatic factors that affect launching?

A Rainy days would lead to the cancellation of the fuelling.

B Clear weather can reduce the air friction the aircraft encounters.

C Strong wind would change the aircraft's path into an uncontrollable trajectory.

D Lightning can cause fatal damage to the launch.

E Clear weather can ensure a safer emergency landing when it is urgent.

Questions 8–13

Do the following statements agree with the information given in the passage?

Write

TRUE *if the statement agrees with the information*
FALSE *if the statement contradicts the information*
NOT GIVEN *if there is no information on this*

8 The guidelines for launch decision-making set by NASA are applicable to other nations.

9 The delay in fuelling will not necessarily result in the cancellation of the mission.

10 If a lightning occurs near the aircraft but does not hit it, there won't be any damage.

11 Airliners are also subject to lightning problems as space shuttles do.

12 The cabin crews' cooperation in emergency landing is the key factor in its success.

13 The director in charge has to evaluate the potential risk to make the final decision.

Speaking

1 词汇基础

1.1 请从方框中选择正确的单词或短语填入相应图片下方的空白处。

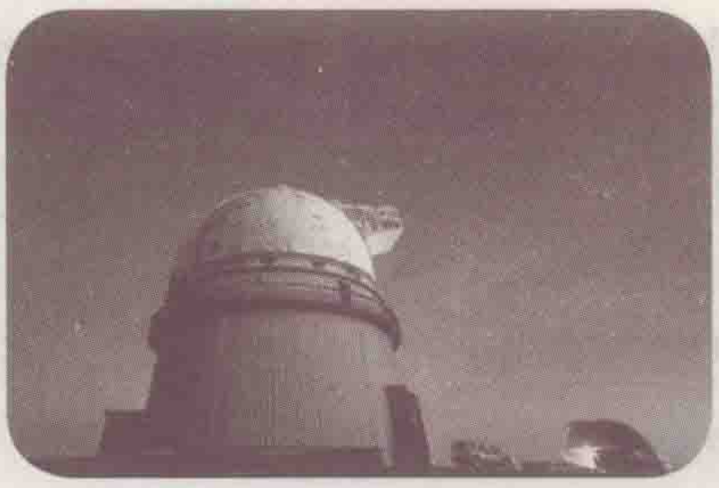
cosmos	space station	Milky Way	observatory



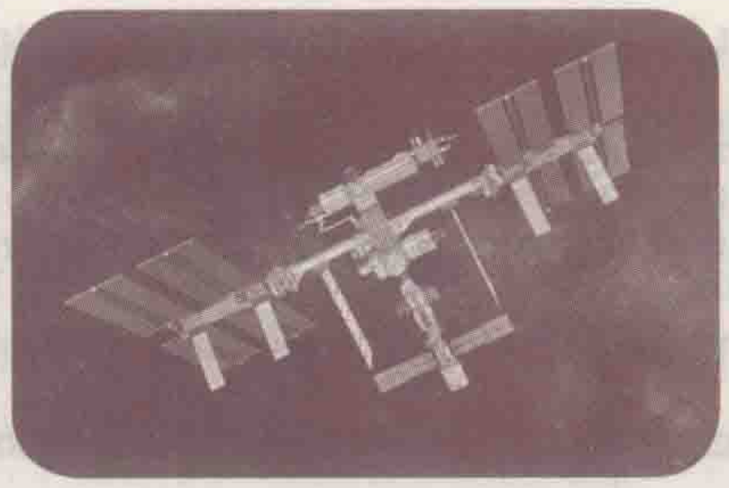
1 _____



2 _____



3 _____



4 _____

1.2 请根据答语，从方框中选择适当的单词，并以其正确形式填入空白处，然后朗读对话。

satellite	spacecraft	orbit	track
cooperate	fragment	debris	

A: How can countries 1 _____ to tackle the space junk problem?

B: They can work together to clean it up.

A: What 2 _____ the Earth?

B: The Moon.

A: Where can you see a 3 _____?

B: In the night sky.

A: Where might a 4 _____ go?

B: To Mars.

2 能力培养

2.1 语法训练——it型强调句扩展用法

在英语表达中，想要突出语境中的特定内容时常常会采用it型强调句。该句型的基本用法我们在第九单元的写作板块中已经学过，这里我们重点来学习它的几种扩展用法。

表示推测或可能性：It + 情态动词 + be + 被强调部分 + that + 其他部分

- It could be **at the observatory** that you see the Venus. 在天文台你可能观测到金星。（强调地点状语）

一般疑问句的强调句型：Is / Was it + 被强调部分 + that / who + 其他部分

- Is it **on the southern hemisphere** that you can observe the phenomenon? 要在南半球才能观测到这个现象吗？（强调地点状语）
- Was it **Edwin Hubble** who invented the Hubble Space Telescope? 是埃德温·哈勃发明了哈勃望远镜吗？（强调主语）
- Was it **the element** that scientists discovered on Mars? 这就是科学家在火星上发现的元素吗？（强调宾语）

特殊疑问句的强调句型：疑问代词 / 疑问副词 + is / was + it + that / who + 其他部分

- **What** is it that you see through the telescope? 你用望远镜看到了什么？（强调宾语）
- **When** was it that the astronauts landed on the Moon for the first time? 宇航员第一次登上月球是什么时候？（强调时间状语）
- **Where** was it that Tony put his books about the universe? 托尼把关于宇宙的书放在哪里了？（强调地点状语）

> **Tips**
>
> 不论被强调部分是单数还是复数，强调句中be动词都要使用单数的is / was。如果原句的时态是现在时，就用is；如果原句的时态是过去时，就用was。

not...until...的强调句型：It is / was not until + 被强调部分 + that + 其他部分（在该句型中强调的内容都是时间状语）

- It is not until **meteors pass the Earth's atmosphere** that they can be seen.
  流星只有穿过地球的大气层时才能被人们看见。
- It was not until **the 16th century** that people proved that the Earth is round.
  直到16世纪，人们才证明了地球是圆的。
- It was not until **recently** that the star was discovered. 直到最近，那颗恒星才被发现。

练习1 请根据括号内的要求改写句子。

1 NASA announced that they found a new star out of the galaxy. (分别改为强调主语 / 宾语 / 状语的强调句)

_____

_____

_____

2 She is making an explanation about the space junk problem. (改为强调画线内容的一般疑问句的强调句)

_____

3 The satellite landed in the Pacific Ocean, and people knew where it was. (改为not...until强调句)

_____

练习2 请用已学词汇和语法描述下列图片。



Example

I enjoy gazing at the sky at night rather than in the daytime...

2.2 发音训练——升调

升调的基本意义是不确定、不完整、不独立，即讲话人对所说内容不肯定，所表达的意思是不完整的，语法结构通常不独立。升调也常常用于表示礼貌。

请听录音，跟读以下例句，通过模仿纠正自己的发音。

表示怀疑和不确定的一般疑问句通常使用升调。

- Is it the book that was written by Stephen Hawking? 这是那本斯蒂芬·霍金写的书吗?
- Have you used a telescope? 你用过望远镜吗?
- Did you see the meteor shower last night? 你昨晚看到流星雨了吗?
- Can you recognise what star it is? 你能认出这是什么星星吗?

陈述疑问句通常使用升调。

- I must choose astronomy as my major? 我必须选择天文学作为我的专业吗?
- You are interested in aliens? 你对外星人感兴趣?

选择疑问句or之前的部分通常使用升调。

- Is the planet black, grey or red? 这颗行星是黑色的、灰色的还是红色的?
- Do you like Mars, Venus or Jupiter? 你喜欢火星、金星还是木星?

反义疑问句的附加问句通常使用升调。

- You are studying astronomy, aren't you? 你在研究天文学，是吗?

- You bought a rocket model, didn't you? 你买了一个火箭模型，是吗?
- The scientists have finished the project on Mars, haven't they? 科学家已经完成了有关火星的项目，是吗?
- There is much junk in space, isn't there? 太空中有很多垃圾，是吗?
- The old satellite needs to be replaced, doesn't it? 旧的卫星需要被更换，是吗?

句中有连续的短语，或有列举的项目，除最后一个，其他短语或项目通常使用升调。

- I like *The Avengers*, *The Terminator*, *Interstellar*, and *Mission to Mars*.
  我喜欢《复仇者联盟》《终结者》《星际穿越》和《火星任务》。
- The librarian searched the Internet, wrote down the names of astronomy materials and then gave them to me. 图书管理员在网上进行了搜索，写下天文学资料的名称，然后给了我。

置于句首的状语通常使用升调。

- A few centuries ago, people still believed that the Earth is the centre of the universe.
  几个世纪以前，人们还坚信地球是宇宙的中心。
- On the shelf is my collection of spaceship models. 架子上是我收藏的宇宙飞船的模型。

表示有礼貌的请求时通常使用升调。

- Look up at the sky, please. 请抬头看看天空。
- Now point out the stars you've already known. 现在，把你认识的星星都指出来吧。

语气显得友好或表示关切的特殊疑问句通常使用升调。

- When did you go to the National Air & Space Museum?
  你是什么时候去的国家航空航天博物馆呢?
- Which character in this science fiction do you like best?
  这部科幻小说中你最喜欢的角色是哪个?

3 话题讲解

3.1 雅思口语Part 1——抽象类



像天文学、太空这样离我们日常生活较远的口语话题，通常难度较高，首先需要积累相关词汇，比如行星和星系的名称、天文望远镜和宇宙空间站的名称及功能等。



可以利用在自然科学课堂学到的天文学知识，或者自己作为天文爱好者了解到的信息等。



当然，不太了解天文学的考生也可以从科幻小说、外星人等角度切入，谈谈自己想象中的场景。



还有，太空移民话题也是一个讨论的方向，这个方向可以与环境和科技类的话题一同准备。

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

- Have you learnt any courses about stars or planets?
- What's your favourite star?
- Do you think it is necessary to discover other planets?
- Do you want to travel in the outer space?

话题表达

visible /'vɪzəbl/ *adj.* 看得见的

alien /'eɪlɪən/ *n.* 外星人

weightlessness /'weɪtləsnəs/ *n.* 失重

living creature 生物

an outer space tour 一场外太空之旅

immigrate to other planets 移居到其他星球

space immigration 太空移民

sense of security 安全感

The course provided me with... 这门课给我提供了……

As a hobby, astronomy attracts... 作为一种爱好，天文学吸引……

The exploration of the outer space was a great personal interest of mine since... 我对探索太空很感兴趣，因为……

The plan of the outer space tour is still in its baby step since... 太空之旅的计划仍处于初级阶段的原因是……

I won't risk my life for... 我不会为……冒生命危险的。

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

Ever since I was a little child, I have frequently gazed at the stars at night, sometimes even for hours. There was a course called Natural Science when I was in primary school. The teacher taught me quite a few lessons about planets, stars and galaxies, like where they are in the universe and what they are called. The exploration of the outer space has always been a great personal interest of mine. If I have the chance to travel in the outer space, I would definitely take it without hesitation. I'd like to experience weightlessness and see our home planet from a different perspective, which would be incredible!

3.2 雅思口语Part 2——事件类

考题重现 **请回答以下问题。**

Describe an interesting lesson that you attended about the universe.

You should say:

where you attended this lesson

when you attended this lesson

what it was about

and explain why you found it interesting.

思路解析与拓展



雅思口语Part 2事件类话题一般要求详细描述事件发生的时间、地点、包含的人物和主要内容，就像讲一个有情节的故事一样。



题目要求描述一节有趣的、与宇宙有关的课程，所以课程的主要内容、在这节课上学到的知识、教学方式甚至是老师等都是可以切入的方向吧?



是的。比如可以介绍在课堂上看到的有关宇宙的图片、视频和老师讲解的宇宙故事等。



最后还可以谈谈我们对这节课的感受，以及这节课给我们带来的影响。



话题表达

spatial distribution 空间分布

Milky Way 银河系

solar system 太阳系

on the horizon 在地平线上

planetary orbit 行星轨道

a cloud of stars 一群星星

Mars probe 火星探测器

People need to reflect carefully... 人们需要认真思考……

Mars is often referred to as... 火星经常被称为……

We learnt about how the universe works and... 我们学习了宇宙是如何运行的，以及……

The film helped explain... 这部电影有助于解释……

Later in the lesson we will... 在课程的后面，我们将……

高分语料 **请听录音，并朗读下面的回答。**

I'm going to talk about an interesting science lesson that I attended at secondary school when I was about 14 years old.

It was quite a long time ago, so I cannot remember everything in detail. But what I clearly remember is that the lesson was about astronomy. We learnt about how the universe works, how the atmosphere protects us, and how we can live on the Earth. The science teacher also taught us to recognise various kinds of constellations.

I found this lesson interesting mainly because my teacher preferred to introduce new topics or concepts by showing us a video. We watched a short film about the origin of the universe, and I found this was a much easier way to understand what was said in the textbook than merely reading.

The film helped explain the formation of the universe and of the humanity. Later in the lesson we saw real photos of the outer space collected by different space probes. We also found that space stations were truly advanced and impressive. I think it is the image of the universe and our planet that makes me still remember the class after so many years.

4 课后练习

4.1 请从方框中选择正确的单词或短语填入空白处，并朗读对话。

limitations	natural urge	space exploration	sci-fi films
interest	imaginative	space travel	

A: OK, so, let's discuss different attitudes towards 1 _____. Why are we so interested in 2 _____?

B: Well, people have a(n) 3 _____ to go to new places. Right now, our knowledge of space still has a mixed range of 4 _____ and uncertainties, despite how much 5 _____ we have in it.

A: Is that why some stories about space travel are so 6 _____?

B: Definitely, yes! It's obviously easy to imagine new realities since we have limited experience of life in space. There are 7 _____ like *Star Wars* and *Arrival* that have achieved great success.

4.2 请回答以下问题。

- What do you think about the International Space Station?
- What do you think will happen if aliens and humans meet?
- Describe a television programme related to the universe that you liked.

  You should say:

  what the programme was

  when and where you watched it

  how you found this programme

  and explain why you liked it.
- Describe a story about the space that you have read or seen on the screen.

  You should say:

  when you read or saw the story

  what happened in the story

  whether the story has any significance today

  and explain how you felt about this story.

Writing

1 词汇基础

1.1 请根据中文提示，拼写出以下单词。

1 探索 e_p_ _re　　2 太空 s_a_ _　　3 人造卫星 s_t_l_ite

4 发射 l_u_c_　　5 通信 co_ _uni_ation　　6 看得见的 v_si_l_

7 广播 b_oa_c_st　　8 无线的 w_re_e_s

1.2 请使用1.1中单词的正确形式填空，完成句子。

1 With the development of technology, humans can _____ the universe freely.

2 Launching communication _____ enables people to access information all over the world immediately.

3 Humans are always curious about the outer _____.

4 The star is _____ to the naked eye.

5 People can get informed of the latest news through _____.

6 The store provides convenient _____ network service.

2 能力培养

2.1 词汇表达

❶ 核心单词及其派生词

核心单词

astronaut /'æstrənɔːt/ *n.* 宇航员

wire /'waɪə(r)/ *n.* 电线

universe /'juːnɪvɜːs/ *n.* 宇宙

explore /ɪk'splɔː(r)/ *v.* 探索

visible /'vɪzəbl/ *adj.* 看得见的；明显的

inhabit /ɪn'hæbɪt/ *v.* 居住于

artificial /ˌɑːtɪ'fɪʃl/ *adj.* 人造的

bound /baʊnd/ *n.* 界限 *adj.* 受约束的

technology /tek'nɒlədʒi/ *n.* 技术

派生词

astronomy /ə'strɒnəmi/ *n.* 天文学

wireless /'waɪələs/ *adj.* 无线的

universal /ˌjuːnɪ'vɜːsl/ *adj.* 普遍的

exploration /ˌekspləˈreɪʃn/ *n.* 探索

invisible /ɪn'vɪzəbl/ *adj.* 看不见的

inhabitable /ɪn'hæbɪtəbl/ *adj.* 适宜居住的

artificially /ˌɑːtɪ'fɪʃəli/ *adv.* 人造地

boundless /'baʊndləs/ *adj.* 无限的，无边无际的

technological /ˌteknə'lɒdʒɪkl/ *adj.* 技术的

❷ 常用短语

Earth orbit 地球轨道

solar system 太阳系

artificial satellite 人造卫星

interstellar space 星际空间

outer space 太空，外层空间

space exploration 太空探索

space probe 太空探测器

space programme 太空项目

space research 太空研究

space shuttle 太空飞船

cutting-edge technology 尖端技术

communication satellite 通信卫星

explore the unknown 探索未知

broaden our view 拓宽视野

in the universe 在宇宙中

the Earth's atmosphere 地球大气层

predict weather and natural disasters 预测天气和自然灾害

put astronauts' lives in danger 置宇航员的生命于危险之中

in zero gravity 处于失重状态

rocket launch boosters 火箭发射助推器

space debris 太空碎片

technical challenges 技术挑战

❸ 句型及例句

make a major breakthrough in... 在……方面取得重大突破

- Scientists have **made a major breakthrough in** developing a stronger material to build the rocket.
  科学家们在研制更坚固的火箭制造材料方面取得了重大突破。

pave the way for... 为……铺平道路

- This project will **pave the way for** better cooperation between the two countries.
  这个项目将为两国间更好的合作铺平道路。

cater to the need of... 迎合……的需要

- The design of the vacuum package **caters to the need of** customers who want to enjoy the snacks conveniently. 真空包装的设计迎合了想要方便享用零食的顾客的需求。

offer an insight into... 帮助深入了解……

- Maps can **offer an insight into** the geographical features of this town.
  地图能帮助人们深入了解这个城镇的地理特征。

练习 请从方框中选择适当的短语填空，完成句子。

Earth orbit	outer space	space research
space shuttle	cutting-edge technology	communication satellite

1 Scientists have collected very little evidence to support that lives can survive in the _____.

2 The Earth runs in the _____ constantly.

3 The government just launched a _____ to provide an overall signal coverage for people.

4 A _____ is a carrier designed to travel into space and back to the Earth several times.

5 It is believed that _____ offers us a different perspective of the Earth and the world we live in.

6 Space science represents the _____ among all the fields.

2.2 语法重点

小结

❶ 主谓一致

“分数 / 百分数 + of + 名词”作主语时，谓语动词与of后的名词保持一致

- One-tenth of my classmates **want** to be astronomers in the future.
  我们班有十分之一的同学将来想成为天文学家。

“more than one / many a + 单数名词”作主语时，谓语动词用单数

- More than one person **has** the desire to have a space travel in the spacecraft.
  不止一个人有乘宇宙飞船去太空旅行的愿望。

“a large amount of + 不可数名词”作主语时，谓语动词用单数

- A large amount of money **has** been invested into space exploration.
  已经有大量的资金投入了太空探索。

主语为从句时，一般谓语动词用单数

- Whether space exploration brings benefit **is** debated openly at the conference.
  会上公开讨论了太空探索是否会带来好处。

定语从句中的谓语动词与从句所修饰的名词或名词短语保持一致

- The curiosity about the unknown, which **is** the nature of humans, drives us to explore the universe consistently.
  人类本性中对未知的好奇心驱使我们不断地探索宇宙。

❷ there be句型

there be句型是雅思写作中常用的一种特殊句型。“there be + 主语”后可接过去分词、定语从句等不同的形式。

- **There is** a huge amount of floating space debris left in the universe.
  宇宙中有大量飘浮的太空垃圾。
- **There are** many sci-fi films where aliens are presented as violent predators.
  有许多科幻电影把外星人描述为暴力掠夺者。

❸ 含有it的特殊句型

强调句

该句型通常用于强调句子的主语、宾语或状语，突出所需要传达的重要信息或引起特别注意。

- **It is** the issues of our own planet **that** should be the top priority in terms of government spending.
  我们这个星球的问题应该是政府开支的优先事项。
- **It is** the growing environmental and economic crisis **that** governments should attach great importance to.
  政府应该高度重视日益严重的环境和经济危机。

it作形式主语

为避免头重脚轻，当句子的主语为不定式短语、动名词短语或主语从句等较长的结构时，通常将it作为句子的形式主语放在句首，而将句子真正的主语放在后面。

- **It** is important for scientists to continue pushing the boundaries of our understanding of the space.
  对科学家来说，继续加深我们对太空的认识是很重要的。
- **It** is worthwhile thinking about the significance of space exploration. 思考太空探索的意义是值得的。
- **It** is a fact that many technologies developed in space engineering can be applied in our daily life.
  事实是，在空间工程中发展起来的许多技术都可以应用于我们的日常生活中。

练习 **请使用括号中单词的正确形式填空，完成句子。**

1 Many a non-governmental organisation _____ (be) involved in the campaign to popularise knowledge of space science last year.

2 Whether the government should increase the funding in space exploration _____ (have) been heatedly discussed.

3 All the planets that _____ (move) around the Sun need to stay in a regular orbit.

4 There is always a new zone for us _____ (explore) in the future.

5 It _____ (be) Armstrong who first mounted the Moon.

6 It is a significant move for governments _____ (launch) a satellite into the space.

2.3 衔接方式

小结

用途	从属连词（短语）	连接副词（短语）	介词（短语）	其他
表示因果关系		hence		
表示转折/对比与比较关系		nevertheless, nonetheless		
表示让步关系	although, no matter who / where / what / how		regardless of	

（待续）

（续表）

用途	从属连词（短语）	连接副词（短语）	介词（短语）	其他
表示条件	lest, until, on condition that, only if			
表示时间／顺序	until	simultaneously, meanwhile		
表示并列关系		meanwhile, similarly, alternatively, simultaneously	as well as, apart from, for one thing...for another...	
表示总结		overall	in conclusion, on the whole, in short, in brief, in a word	to sum up, to conclude
表示举例／解释		specifically	in other words, including	such as, to illustrate this, to give an illustration of this
表示递进		furthermore, more importantly		what is more, what is worse
表示程度			to some extent	
表达个人观点		personally	in my opinion, for my part, from my perspective, from my point of view	I firmly believe that, it is my firm belief that
表示强调		first and foremost, clearly, fortunately	on top of..., above all, in fact, as a matter of fact	
引出讨论				as far as...is concerned, as far as...goes

练习 **请根据逻辑关系，用前面学过的衔接词或短语改写下列句子。**

1 There are several ways to improve the hardness of the metal.

Adding other metals to form an alloy is an effective method.

_____

2 Space stations are the living centre of all astronauts.

They have to adapt to the life in space stations.

_____

3 The Moon orbits around the Earth. Other satellites also move around the Earth.

_____

4 Space travel is not available. Our technology has developed into a mature stage.

_____

5 Developing space science can provide better support for space missions.

The advancement can benefit our daily life in many other aspects.

---

3 题型讲解

3.1 宇宙探索类话题

雅思写作大作文的结尾一定要有结论段。结论段的观点没有对错之分，考官不会质疑考生的观点，所以可以自由选择观点倾向，表达清楚即可。一个完整的结论段通常起到以下作用：

- 重申文章立场和总结主要观点——用一个句子简要总结文章主体段提出的倾向并总结观点；
- 对事件的发展作出预测——指出接下来会发生什么情况，或指出采纳或不采纳建议的后果。

由于雅思写作考试有词数限制，大作文的结论段一般写2~3句话即可。

❶ 结论段通常会包含以下内容：

main idea of the essay	主要观点总结
emphasis on the topic	强调主题
personal attitude	个人倾向
future development / prediction	未来发展趋势或预测
suggestion	建议

❷ 结论段中可能用到的句型：

Conclusion	Your opinion	Final conclusion or suggestion
In conclusion, In summary, To conclude, To summarise,	I am convinced that... I feel strongly that... I believe there is not adequate and strong evidence to support the view that... There would be a case for saying that...	Therefore, Hence, As a result, Consequently,

请以下面的题目为例，学习大作文结论段的写作。

Some people believe that spending money on developing technology for space exploration is unjustifiable, and that there are more beneficial ways to spend money. To what extent do you agree or disagree?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

文章架构

开头段	用反对者的观点引出主题：太空探索有好处。
主体段1	给出好处1并解释。
主体段2	给出好处2并解释。
结论段	个人倾向：太空探索有好处。 主要观点总结：处理好国内问题固然重要，但太空探索带来的便利和好处也证明了其自身的价值。

结论段

personal attitude	For my part, I agree with the view that **space exploration** can bring benefits to mankind and that these benefits have not yet been fully understood.
main idea of the essay	It is certainly important for the government to **devote** money **to** the important domestic issues, but we should realise that space exploration indeed **has been of great benefit to human beings**.

个人倾向	就我而言，我同意这样的观点，即空间探索可以给人类带来好处，而这些好处尚未得到充分理解。
主要观点总结	政府把钱花在处理重要的国内问题上当然是重要的，但我们应该认识到，太空探索确实对人类有巨大的好处。

练习 **请根据题目和中文提示，按照文章架构写出结论段。**

Some scientists believe intelligent life forms may exist on other planets and they want to send messages to the space to contact with these life forms. But other scientists believe it is a bad idea because it could be dangerous. Discuss both ideas and give your own opinion.

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

文章架构

开头段	介绍人类探索未知世界的背景，引出主题。
主体段1	观点1：可以接触外星生物，因为可以拓宽认知，寻找可以开发利用的资源。
主体段2	观点2：不可以接触外星生物，因为历史上出现过发现新大陆与殖民的惨痛教训。
结论段	主要观点总结：总之，我们应该把对地球的研究和探索放在首位，而不是外星生命。 个人倾向：发现一种未知的文明可能是有趣的，但这不太可能对我们目前的生存有任何直接的影响。

结论段

3.2 混合图

雅思写作小作文有时会出现包含两种图表的混合型题目。两种图表可能呈现同一种数据，也可能呈现不同数据。

❶ 开头段的内容由两部分构成：

- 图表内容概述
- 数据整体趋势概述

由于该题型中的图表形式不止一种，开头段需要对两种图表分别综述，因此比其他题型的开头段更长一些。

❷ 主体段有两种分段方式：

- 当两个图表所呈现的数据是不同内容时，应该分段对两个图表分别进行描述，即主体段1描述图表1，主体段2描述图表2。
- 当两个图表呈现的数据内容相同，而仅仅是图表形式不同时，可以将数据按前几个单元所讲的方法（如数据相似性、变化快慢等）分组后再分段描述。

由于小作文有词数限制，而且在第一段中已经有总体概述的内容，在结尾处可以不进行总结。

Tips

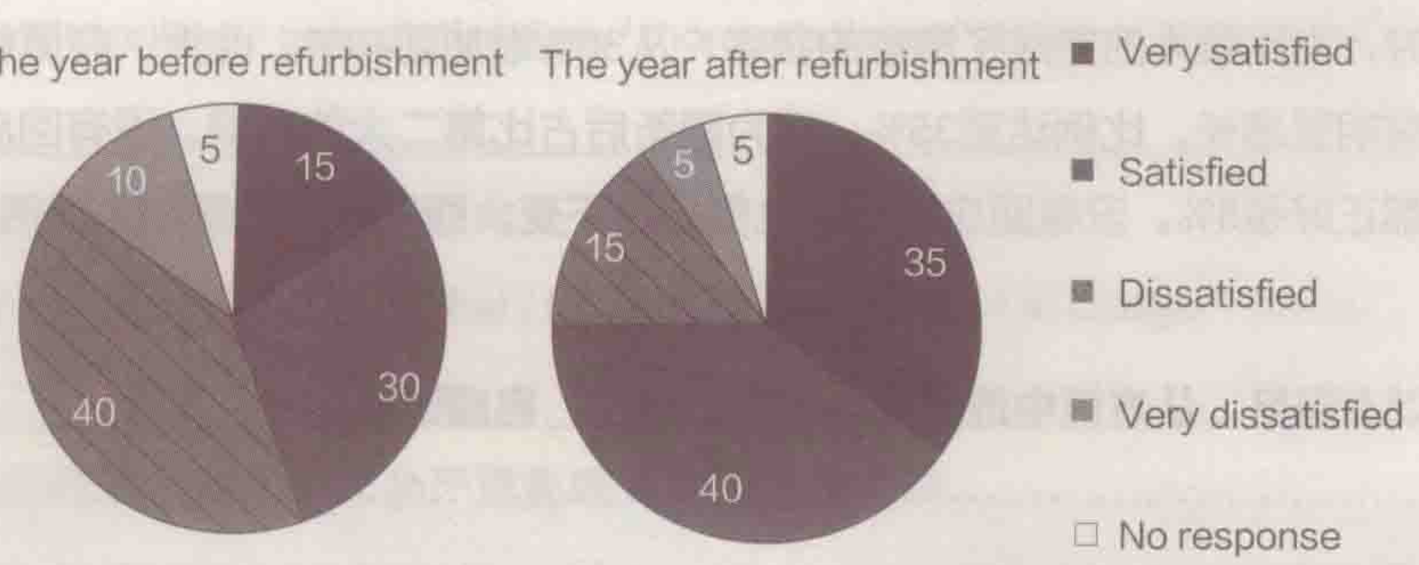
如果一个图表呈现的数据比另一个图表多，应该注意在主体段描述中有所侧重，即简要描述数据少的图表，重点描述数据多的图表。

请以下面的题目为例，学习混合图题的写作方式。

The table below shows the number of visitors to the Space Museum during the year before and the year after it was refurbished. The charts show the results of surveys asking visitors how satisfied they were with their visit, during the same two periods.

Summarise the information by selecting and reporting the main features, and make comparisons where relevant.

Total number of visitors to the Space Museum	
During the year before refurbishment	74,000
During the year after refurbishment	92,000



图表分析

表格呈现的是太空博物馆装修前后参观的总人数；饼状图呈现的是人们对博物馆装修前后的满意程度。因此，两个图表呈现的是不同的数据内容。

开头段 图表概述 + 数据概述

The table shows how many people visited the Space Museum before and after its refurbishment while the pie charts give information about visitors' degree of satisfaction with the museum before and after its refurbishment. Overall, the Space Museum **saw an increase in the number of** visitors after its refurbishment. Meanwhile, after the refurbishment, most people show their satisfaction with their experience at the museum.

表格显示了太空博物馆翻新前后的参观人数，饼状图则显示了游客对博物馆翻新前后的满意度。总的来说，太空博物馆翻新后的参观人数有所增加。与此同时，在翻新之后，大多数游客都对参观博物馆的经历感到满意。

主体段1 表格

It is clear from the table that after the renovation of the museum, the number of visitors **increased by** almost 20,000, **rising sharply from** 74,000 **to** 92,000.

从表格中可以清楚地看出，在对博物馆进行装修之后，参观人数增加了近20,000人，从74,000人快速上升到92,000人。

主体段2 饼状图

Before the refurbishment, the dissatisfied visitors **took up the largest proportion** of 40%. However, after the refurbishment, this figure **saw a significant reduction** by 25% to 15%. Meanwhile, the largest percentage moved to the category of satisfied people, which **increased sharply** from 30% to 40%. Moreover, **there was a noticeable growth in the ratio of** very satisfied people after the museum was refurbished. The figure **reached** 35% and became the second largest proportion after refurbishment. The visitors having no response and feeling very dissatisfied **had exactly the same figure** of 5% after the refurbishment. While the data of people with no response **kept unchanged**, that of the very dissatisfied ones halved.

在装修前，不满意的游客占的比例最大，占到40%。然而，装修后，这一数字显著下降了25%，达到15%。与此同时，占比最大的变成了满意的游客，从30%增加到40%。此外，在博物馆翻修后，非常满意的游客的比例有明显增长，比例达到35%，成为翻新后占比第二大的人群。没有回应及感到非常不满意的游客在翻新后都正好是5%。没有回应的人的比例保持不变，而非常不满意的人比例减半。

练习 **请根据以上题目，从方框中选择适当的表达填空，完成范文。**

increased by	made up the majority	doubled
increased from	represented a rising level	accounting for the smallest part
grew sharply	increased significantly	witnessed a significant decline

开头段

The table shows how many people visited the Space Museum before and after its refurbishment. The pie charts compare the levels of visitors' satisfaction as a result of this change. It is clear from the table that after the refurbishment, the Space Museum became more popular and the number of visitors 1 _____. The figures in the two pie charts 2 _____ of satisfied people.

主体段1 表格

According to the table, after the refurbishment, the number of tourists coming to this Space Museum 3 _____ 18,000.

主体段2 饼状图（满意）

The proportion of surveyed visitors giving good feedback to this museum after the change 4 _____. The very satisfied and satisfied people 5 _____. More specifically, the figure of people feeling very satisfied was 35%, which more than 6 _____ that before refurbishment. In addition, the percentage of satisfied tourists 7 _____ 30% to 40%.

主体段3 饼状图（不满意）

On the other hand, the dissatisfied and very dissatisfied people 8 _____ from the percentage of 40% to 15% and 10% to 5% respectively. In terms of the visitors giving no response, there were always 5% of them in both two periods, 9 _____.

4 课后练习

4.1 请根据中文提示，重新排列所给句子组成部分，完成句子。

1 一些太空项目可以帮助科学家更多地了解地球的大气层。

scientists / help / can / the Earth's atmosphere / some space projects / learn more about

_____

2 许多卫星为我们提供了更好地预测天气变化和自然灾害的数据。

to predict / many satellites / natural disasters / more precisely / statistics / us / weather changes / offer / and

_____

3 不可否认，太空探索会使宇航员的生命处于危险之中。

puts / cannot / astronauts' lives / it / that / be / space exploration / in danger / denied

_____

4 研究表明，长时间处于失重状态会严重影响人的心血管系统。

seriously affect / spending / a long time / have shown / studies / in a zero gravity environment / can / cardiovascular system / people's / that

_____

5 人们仍然相信外星人的存在，因为还有无数未被探索过的行星。

people / aliens / there are / the existence of / still / because / endless unexplored planets / believe

6 要在制造一种更坚固的材料上取得突破还需要数百万美元。

takes / in /make a breakthrough / it / creating / millions of / dollars / to / a stronger material

4.2 请根据题目和文章架构中的中文提示写出相应的句子，完成写作。

Space travel has been possible for some time. Some people think space tourism can help to develop economy. What do you think about it? What are the positive and negative effects of space tourism?

Give reasons for your answer and include any relevant examples from your own knowledge or experience.

文章架构

开头段	背景介绍，引出主题：人们渴望有机会亲自登上航天飞船，目睹宇宙的神奇风景。
主体段1	太空旅行的消极面：太空旅行过程中游客的生命很可能因为技术问题受到威胁。
主体段2	太空旅行的积极面：太空旅行能帮助我们开拓视野，使我们认识到地球在宇宙中的位置。
结论段	主要观点总结：太空旅行需要在保证技术成熟的前提下进行。

开头段

背景句	
改写题目	
立场或个人观点	

主体段1

观点	
解释观点	
进一步解释或举例	
细节或举例的结果	
结论	

主体段2

观点	
解释观点	
进一步解释或举例	
细节或举例的结果	
结论	

结论段

主要观点总结	
个人倾向	

Audio Scripts

Unit 6 Globalisation and Culture

1.1

Presenter: Can you tell us some culture shock you have experienced when you are travelling?

Expert: Well, British people have the reputation for being more polite than people from other cultures, as British people always say 'please' and 'thank you' when asking for and receiving things. It's considered polite. **Q2** In other countries, like Italy **Q1**, to say 'please' and 'thank you' all the time sounds a bit false. **Q3**

Presenter: Thank you very much for that. That was very enlightening.

3.2

练习1

Mayor: Today we're talking about the impact of tourism on the local area. The first issue I want to address is the growing number of tourists each year and whether this is a problem.

Woman A: Well, the traffic has certainly got worse over the last few years! It takes me far longer time to drive into the city centre now than it used to. **Q1** A few years ago, it would take 20 minutes; now it takes almost an hour.

Man A: I agree. The traffic is a lot worse now, but that's not the biggest problem we face. For me, it's housing. It's so much more expensive to buy or rent a house now! It's almost impossible to afford a house on a regular salary and far too many homes are sold as vacation homes to rich investors. **Q2** It's much harder for people who live in this area to buy one. I'm a waiter of an Indian restaurant. I'm actually living in the back room of the restaurant. I cannot afford to buy or rent a house. We've got to do something about that!

Woman B: Can I just interrupt? I know that tourists have had a few negative impacts on the local area, but I don't think it's all bad. I run a souvenir shop, and more than half of my business each year comes from the tourist trade. Tourists make a big contribution to the local economy and keep much of our business busy. We've got to keep them coming.

Man B: Oh sure, I'm also a business owner. And one problem I see is that tourists only come here when the weather is good. When the weather is bad, tourists don't come. **Q3** This year has been really hard for my business. The bad weather we've had has stopped people coming here. I'd like to see an approach that doesn't depend so much on tourism.

Mayor: OK.

练习2

Presenter: Good afternoon and welcome to *Culture Clash*. Today we're going to talk about cultural differences. We have Dr Peter Vertonghen with us today.

Vertonghen: Good afternoon.

Presenter: Firstly, let's think about communication. How do different people communicate in different cultures?

Vertonghen: Well, one key difference is in people's emotional expression. People from 'open' cultures are able to be open about how they feel, so they find it easier to express anger and happiness. **Q1** In 'closed' cultures, people find it harder to express their feelings, especially in formal environments, such as school, university or work. **Q2** People from 'closed' cultures are usually more modest than those from 'open' cultures. **Q3**

Presenter: OK, what other differences are there in the way people of certain cultures communicate?

Vertonghen: Well, people from 'open' cultures, like those from Latin America, rely a lot on hand gestures to express what they are saying when they speak. People from more 'closed' cultures tend to be the opposite. They don't rely on hand gestures at all. **Q4**

Presenter: Um, I see.

Vertonghen: Also, those from 'open' cultures tend to look directly at others' eyes while they are speaking to them. But the Americans, from cultures between 'open' and 'closed', often look people in the eye at the beginning of a conversation and then they start to look away. **Q5** People from Eastern cultures, like those in Asia, are less likely to look people in the eye while they are speaking to them.

Presenter: And what about when people are speaking?

Vertonghen: Well, people in 'open' cultures often speak over one another when they are communicating, **Q6** whereas in 'closed' cultures, the opposite is the case. In countries like Japan, for example, it is considered extremely rude to interrupt others when they are speaking. It's also polite to wait for a while before responding, so there is more silence. **Q7**

Presenter: I see. I'm sure we've all learnt a lot today.

4.1

1

Sam: Hey, Mick. Have you ever been to Malaysia?

Mick: Yeah. I went there on holiday two years ago. Why?

Sam: I want to do a project on Asian cuisine and I'm wondering whether Malaysian food is different from Indian food.

Mick: Um...Malaysian food is not really the same as Indian food, but they use a lot of the same ingredients. Some of the dishes are extremely hot. **Q1**

2

Lisa: Hi, Tony. Can you help me?

Tony: Sure. What's the problem?

Lisa: I'm studying different housing types across the world and I want to know about the most common type of house in Canada.

Tony: There are many apartments in all Canadian cities. It's not different from the majority of cities in the world. Q2

3

Li: Hi, Barbara. How's your French language project going?

Barbara: It's great! And what about your project on the Swiss? How many languages do they speak?

Li: Probably three, the northerners speak German, while the westerners speak French. Q3 And people in some parts also speak Italian.

Barbara: Wow! That's fascinating!

4

Girl: I'm doing research on national costumes. Do you know anything about costumes in India?

Boy: Oh, yes, I can help you there...The traditional Indian dress for women is known as Saree. You might have seen it before. It's a long colourful dress, covered with all kinds of decorations. The most common material used to make it is silk. Q4 I've got a few samples here. Take a look.

Girl: Oh, they are amazing!

4.3

Teacher: So, everyone, does anyone have questions for Mr Anderson? Please feel free to ask. Yes, Emma.

Emma: What's the best place you've ever been to?

Anderson: Ah, I'd have to say Argentina. Argentina has a combination of amazing scenery and incredible food, as well as a vibrant local culture. It also has an interesting history. Q1

Teacher: Anyone else?

Peter: What's the oddest thing you've eaten? I mean, have you had anything like a crocodile or something else?

Anderson: Oh, no, I've never eaten anything like that, but I've certainly had some odd meals. Once in India, I ate a fried centipede... Q2 It actually tasted great, but it's not something I'd like to eat again.

Teacher: Yes, Dave.

Dave: What's the worst experience you've had in another country? Like a serious problem or illness?

Anderson: Well, actually, I've never had any terrible experience. I got sick a few times in Africa but there was nothing too bad. Some of the boat trips I took were a little scary at times, especially when the water was rough. But nothing dangerous happened. I guess I'm just very lucky. Q3

Claire: Do you think there's a difference between a tourist and a traveller?

Anderson: That's a great question! Actually, I've never been asked that before. I think the difference is actually quite simple: suitcases and backpacks. Tourists travel with suitcases, but travellers use backpacks. Q4 Travellers don't go on holiday; they're seeking a different experience. Does that make sense?

Claire: Yes, I think so.

Anderson: Here's another way of distinguishing them. It's easy to spot a tourist. Tourists carry maps and cameras; their clothes don't fit in with local fashion. Q5 Travellers, on the other hand, are less easy to spot.

4.4

Joe: Good morning, Susan! How are you?

Susan: I'm good. Thanks, Joe.

Joe: How is your research for our minority language project going?

Susan: I have had trouble acquiring information about the number of Cornish speakers in the UK. Q1 The number from Cornish Language Office differs from the record at the Office for National Statistics, so it is hard to determine which is correct.

Joe: When I checked the government's minority language website, I noticed that nearly half of the minority language speakers in the UK speak Welsh.

Susan: Are you sure that it is nearly half? I have heard that Welsh and Gaelic speakers are about the same in number.

Joe: In the past when Gaelic was mandatory at school, it was about even. Q2 However, today there are more Welsh speakers. Q3 On the other hand, determining the number of Cornish speakers is very difficult because there are very few who are fluent. Q4 A majority of the people who speak it can only do it at the intermediate level.

Susan: That explains the different statistics. In my opinion, it is better to use the more conservative estimates based on fluent speakers.

Joe: That is a great idea!

Susan: When you use fluent speaker estimates, it is easy to see that Welsh is the most widely spoken language. Q5

Joe: What will we focus on for the report?

Susan: There are many colleges and schools doing great work promoting local languages, so we can focus on that.

Joe: Great point! We need that in our report.

Susan: And recording the language usage in regard to online communication is what we need to do.

Joe: Exactly!

Unit 7 Doing Business

2.3

练习4

Tour guide: Hello, I'm Lindsay Guinn. I'd like to introduce the National Bank Museum to you. As you will notice when you enter the gate, there is an information desk beside it, Q1 where you can ask for help or for the map of our museum. We are standing right in the middle of the museum now. And this is always the starting point of a guided tour. We will firstly go across the corridor to learn the origin of the bank. There will be some collections and paintings about the early history. Q2 After we learn the beginning of the bank, turn right, I would be so proud to show you the stock office, which has a long history of 150 years. Q3 You can also take some interesting pictures with these statues.

Man: Sorry, can I interrupt? I'd like to know where the toilet is?

Tour guide: Oh, if you need to go to the toilet, you will find it on the same side of the information desk.

Man: Thank you.

Tour guide: Let's go back to our tour. When we finish visiting the stock office, I will show you the highlight of the tour — a really big golden ship is exhibited in our show room, which is in the corner of the right side. **Q4** Finally, after we finish our tour, you can buy some souvenirs from our store beside the show room, **Q5** and thank you for listening.

3.2

练习1

Good afternoon and welcome to our New Age Shopping Mall. We have all kinds of trendy goods that you need. Please let me introduce the mall to you. When you walk through the entrance, you can see the jewellery section in the centre of the hall, **Q1** where you can see special displays sometimes. And we will send e-mails to inform you if you are a member of our shopping mall. And the cosmetics section is behind the jewellery section. **Q2** You can find a series of international brands here. If you are tired, you could have a coffee in the back of the building, where there is a lovely café. **Q3** If you have children with you, I strongly suggest you check on our new children's zone on the second floor. And you can take the lift from the right corner on the first floor. **Q4** When you arrive at the second floor, you will see the children's zone on the east near a small bookstore, **Q5** which will provide some comfortable chairs for reading. Just let your children have a good time here when you can take your time to shop or have a meal on the west side. A new American restaurant opens here. **Q6** Oh, a lot of people would like to know where the bathroom is. You can find it on the same side of the restaurant, in the corner. **Q7** And if you have more questions, please find our service desk on the other end. **Q8**

练习2

Recently, we have been looking more closely at e-commerce. Today we're going to discuss Internet banking, or online banking, and how it has developed in the past few years.

We have to go back to the 1980s to understand the origins of online banking. People with access to a computer and a monitor, typically those who worked in finance, were able to access the banking system through their phone line, **Q1** though the service was limited compared to today's system. It was possible to access financial information online, and you could also send information to the bank, but nothing more. If you wanted to transfer money, you had to instruct the bank with a letter sent through the post. **Q2** In 1981, several American banks began offering the first online service, **Q3** and soon other countries followed. Even so, the service wasn't widely used, and only a limited number of customers could use it. **Q4**

By the 1990s, the Internet began to change things dramatically. Personal computers became hugely popular, and people began logging on to the Internet. By the middle of the decade, many financial institutions had begun to offer online banking services through a web browser, similar to what we use today. However, many people were concerned about the security of carrying out transactions on the Internet. **Q5** In the early days, online banking fraud was a serious risk, and there was little protection, so few people believed in it.

However, two things began to change public perceptions. Firstly, banks began to introduce sweeping security features to their websites. Secondly, the rise of online stores, like Amazon and eBay meant there was a need for some kinds of online payment systems. **Q6&Q7** This made people feel more comfortable when conducting financial transactions on the Internet.

At this point, Internet banking really became popular. Within 10 years, almost two-thirds of account holders in the US shifted their banking operations online. In some northern European countries, like Sweden and Finland, **Q8–Q10** up to 90 per cent of bank customers were doing their business online. Soon, online banks began to appear, offering banking services only on the Internet.

4.1

Presenter: Hello and welcome to *The Shopping Channel*. Today we're going to look at bargaining. We have Amanda Barrie with us today, a journalist and a very enthusiastic shopper.

Amanda: Hi there.

Presenter: Amanda, most people in Britain don't bargain over the price in shops. We pay the full price as is listed in the shop. **Q1** However, there are some examples when we might bargain for a lower price. What do you think? What kinds of products might you bargain for — a house, a car, some furniture or an old CD?

Amanda: Well, it depends on where you are. Obviously there are certain places where you cannot bargain, but it's possible to bargain on market stalls and in some shops. For example, if you pay with cash or buy many things, you might get a price reduction. **Q2** What would I bargain for? Well, probably a phone and maybe, jewellery, some earrings. It's pretty common to bargain for clothes too.

Presenter: So, what bargaining techniques do you advise, Amanda?

Amanda: Well, your manner is important. You should be polite, but it's important to have confidence, to have faith that you can get what you want, but don't be rude. **Q3** You definitely shouldn't be rude.

Presenter: So, what should you do?

Amanda: The most important thing is to praise the product before talking about its flaws.

Presenter: And what can you do to get a discount?

Amanda: The best approach is to say that you don't have much money, which might be true, and there's no reason you should be ashamed of that!

Presenter: What do you do if this fails?

Amanda: Er, well, just smile and go to the next place. **Q4**

Presenter: Thank you very much, Amanda.

4.2

Thank you for choosing our 'Save Your Life' insurance. If you have any question, please come to our information desk at our office hours. You can easily see it when you walk in through the door. **Q1** If you need any service, please go to the centre of our company, where you can be served at our counters. **Q2** But please queue if there are too many customers. Thank you for

your cooperation. If you want to consult about our company's business, please go to the back of the counters; the first room on your left is consulting office, where you can get our one-to-one service. Q3 And our manager would love to hear your advice and suggestions, who is normally working at the end of the corridor. Q4 But please do not enter the second room by mistake, because it is our staff office, Q5 and it's not for customers. Finally, anyone who needs the bathroom can find it at the other end of the door. Thank you for your attention, and we are happy to serve you anytime.

4.3

Sam: Excuse me, it's my first time to visit this city. Could you tell me where the bank is?

Ann: Sure, you can walk down the St David's Street from the cinema, then you will see a shopping mall on your left. Q1 Then turn left and continue your way on the Woodland Street. Before crossing the Maple Road, you will see a school. Q2 And there is a post office on the opposite side of the road. Q3 Turn right and walk along the Maple Road until a train station appears, Q4 and the bank is right next to it. Q5

Sam: Thank you so much!

Ann: You're welcome. Have a good day!

Unit 8 Ecosystem

1.3

Today, we're going to look at wind turbines. A wind turbine works like a fan, but in reverse. Q1 Instead of using electricity to make wind, like a fan, a wind turbine uses wind to make electricity. Q2 The wind turns the blades, which in turn spin Q3 a generator to create electricity. The patterns of wind are different across different parts of the world and influenced by many factors, including sunlight and vegetation. Q4 People have been using wind power for sailing Q5 and flying kites, as well as generating Q6 electricity.

3.2

练习1

Today, we're going to look at an off-shore oil rig and find out how it is laid out. Well, technically, we should call it an oil platform. Let's look at this diagram here and you'll notice that the upper part of the platform is suspended on the surface of the water. On the platform, the tall tower you can see is called a derrick, spelt D-E-R-R-I-C-K. Q1 This is where the lifting equipment used for extracting oil is installed. OK. Further down, right here, you'll notice the helicopter. Q2 The helicopter is an important way of transport for employees travelling to and from the platform. If we pay close attention to the very bottom of the platform right here, it should be obvious that there are two support towers Q3 which are used to support the rest of the platform. These metal structures are generally connected to the sea bed with long cables. OK, now the final part of the platform as you can see is right here sticking out of the platform. This is a crane, spelt C-R-A-N-E. Q4 Cranes are essential for construction workers, and the one you can see here is specially designed for lifting heavy parts.

练习2

Today's lecture will address the issue of biofuels and their potential applications in the future as an alternative to conventional fossil fuels. Biofuels can be extracted directly from plants, or generated from waste. Q1&Q2 The conversion process is eco-friendly. Q3 One of the major benefits of biofuels is that they are usually a leftover waste product of another process, such as farming. Besides, biofuels have been used in agriculture across Europe and America. Q4 International biofuel organisations were gradually established, one of which was the International Biofuel Association, set up to improve cooperation and technology exchange among different regions. National projects in biofuel research began in the early 21st century and China alone has already had many factories using biofuel production methods. Q5 Biomass can be changed into easy-to-use energy-saving substances in two alternative ways: heat conversion or biological conversion. Once the process has been completed, it is relatively uncomplicated to store the biofuels. Q6

Solid biomass fuels include things like wood, grass cuttings, household waste and so on. When the solid biomass is not in an appropriate form, the best way to convert it is, first, to turn the biomass into powder. Q7 Next, the raw materials will be crushed into a suitable size, which is typically small. As of now, this leads to the development of wood cubes, but it is likely that further products will be made possible in the future. The biomass product which is denser and bigger in comparison to wood chips requires sticky substances. Q8 The final biofuel product is then put into boilers to burn and will convert water into steam. Q9 Large boilers tend to be used in the production of steam, with bigger devices used to generate more power, though little electricity is used during the process of these operations. Q10

4.2

Renewable energy from the Sun, or solar power as it is known, has become increasingly popular. As solar power enters the energy market, the main question is, 'How do solar panels work?' So, today, we're going to talk about it.

Solar panels work by absorbing sunlight and using something called inverter technology. There are three main steps in this process. First, the solar panels absorb the Sun's energy and convert it into direct current electricity. Q1 Next, the solar inverter converts the energy into the kind that is used by most home devices. Q2 And in the end, the leftover energy is transferred to the electric network. Q3

Buildings that are connected to the electric network have a device installed. This device is installed to measure and supply the power of the building. Q4&Q5 Wherever the solar panels of the building are connected — either on the roof or on the ground — they are linked to this device. Most homeowners in the US have access to the electric network. If your home has solar panels, your solar system will automatically transmit unused power to the network. This is particularly useful during summer months when there are huge reserves of solar energy. Q6 By doing this, you will receive credits on your electricity bill. Q7 Then, during hours of low electricity production, such as nights or when the weather is bad, Q8 these credits can be used to get extra energy from the network in order to meet household electricity demand.

Q9 In a sense, this makes solar energy an all-in-one energy solution. The most frequent reason people give for avoiding solar energy is the potential problems of energy production caused by the lack of sunlight. However, a free storage solution can change people's views. Such incentives, plus the fact that the cost of solar energy has dropped by almost 70 per cent in the past decade, have explained why the demand for solar energy is on the rise. Q10

Unit 9 Wildlife

Listening

1.3

David: Morning, Professor Saunders. Do you have a moment?

Saunders: Sure, David. Come in and sit down. How can I help you?

David: Well, I'm going to Scotland to conduct research Q1 on birds this Saturday.

Saunders: Oh, yes. You're doing a project on endangered Q2 bird species, aren't you?

David: Yes. This is the first time I've done this sort of research, and I'd like some advice from you as you're an expert Q3 in the field.

Saunders: OK, sure. Well, I hope you've got your binoculars Q4 because they're necessary. You need a very light pair that won't weigh you down, and they need to provide you with clear sights. The last thing you want is blurred images. Q5

David: Definitely not!

Saunders: Now, the last piece of advice I'd give you is about fieldcraft.

David: Fieldcraft?

Saunders: Yes. You need to be very careful about how you track Q6 the birds, as you don't want to scare them off with sudden movements, bright clothing, or sudden noises. You should try to be as quiet as possible when you're watching them. So, make sure your clothes blend in with the scenery Q7 and keep yourself out of the birds' sight while you're observing Q8 them.

2.3

练习2

Interviewer: So, Deejay, you know so much about the wildlife here. How did you know that?

Deejay: From an early age, I've known about the wildlife and its habitats in Kalahari.

Interviewer: That's where you met your wife, right?

Deejay: Yes, that's an interesting story.

Interviewer: How?

Deejay: If a young man wants to marry a girl, he needs her father's permission. In order to get the nod from her father, he has to perform a task. Q1

Interviewer: What sort of thing do you mean?

Deejay: For example, he needs to prove that he can steal a lion's prey. Q2

Interviewer: Wow! That's...Isn't that dangerous?

Deejay: Extremely! Now, imagine a lion kills a large animal. If a man can approach the animal and remove it from the lion, this proves that he can protect a family. Q3

Interviewer: Wow, how is that possible? How can you find a lion and its prey?

Deejay: Well, first, you can seek out the prey, like birds. Q4

Interviewer: When is the proper time to steal the prey, I wonder?

Deejay: Well, the safest time to do it is daytime. Q5

Interviewer: Why?

Deejay: It is very hot in the daytime and in this case big cats like lions cannot run very fast.

Interviewer: They cannot?

Deejay: No, they cannot. Eating makes them tired and the hot weather makes it impossible for them to run very fast. Usually, they sleep through the daytime and don't start moving until night, when they are the most dangerous. Also, they see better in the dark than humans.

Interviewer: OK. So let's imagine the lion is sleeping. How does the man approach the lion? Does he attack it with a weapon? Kill it?

Deejay: No, no, no, no. The man should just approach and make a loud noise without hurting the lion. He only needs to surprise the lion. Q6

Interviewer: Wow!

3.2

练习1

Lecturer: The topic of this lecture is wildlife, and I'm going to begin by telling you something about lions and then I will introduce the most recent studies undertaken.

Of course, lions' habitats are often found in plains across Africa. Apart from Africa, the Indian forest is still inhabited by small groups of lions. Going back almost half a million years ago, there were more lions in the world than dogs or monkeys. You could see lions in places like modern-day London, Moscow or Los Angeles, as well as the entire African continent, except the desert. The only areas of the world lions cannot inhabit are the colder regions of the north and south poles. Also, despite the abundance of bushland there, you won't find lions living in Australia. Q1&Q2

So why don't we see so many lions today? Well, we know for certain that as recently as the 19th century, around 200 years ago, lions were a hugely sought-after target for hunters. As a result of the popularity of hunting, lions became extinct in some parts of the world. Much earlier, around 10,000 years ago, the lion population had already begun to decrease in certain parts of the globe. Scientists attribute this to the competition between lions and humans for food, as they both sought smaller creatures for food. Besides, many lions were killed for clothing. Q3–Q5

练习2

Good afternoon, everyone, I work here at Robin Wildlife Park, and I'm responsible for animal welfare in the park. So, let me give you an introduction. To begin with, I guess most of you know that our park was founded in the early 1980s. Q1

As you know, the park is actually a charity and we specialise in preserving endangered species of animals. The actual size of the park is over 90 hectares, and we hold a total of 350 animals belonging to around 60 different species. Q2 Here in the park, guests can come and see the animals roaming around in their natural habitat. Safety is, of course, our priority. Q3

Almost all animals come from Europe, with some from south-east Asia and Africa. Apart from animals, there are many fun activities for the families.

We have a lot of popular animals, but giraffes are our star attraction. Q4 The Rothschild's giraffe is one of our most special creatures. If you get close, you'll be able to hand-feed them. Q5 You can do this from twelve at noon until four in the afternoon. It's one of the most popular options we have and is especially popular with children.

So let's take a look at the map of the park. You'll see we're here at the main entrance. Over there to the left, you'll notice the information centre. Q6 Travelling around the park is relatively easy and there are many ways you can get around. You can take one of our daily guided walkabout tours, or you can take one of our tourist vehicles and travel around the park with our experts. The first vehicle leaves at 9 am every day — the next one will arrive in 15 minutes. You can find them near the peacock enclosure just to the right here. Q7 From there, you can go down to the restroom. Q8 Just further down, you'll see the Oceania birds area. Q9 If you get there at the right time, you can see them being fed. Next, you can see the reptile house between the Oceania birds area and the lion enclosure. Q10

4.2

Today's lecture is about the migration habits of birds. We will look specifically at how birds fly in large groups across various regions on the planet at different times of the year. So, the first question is: Why do birds migrate? Actually, there are two main reasons. The first reason relates to food. Birds go off in search of food depending on the season. Secondly, they migrate in search of more suitable places for breeding. Obviously, during periods when birds are reproducing and then looking after their offspring, their food requirements increase. Q1&Q2 In the early part of the year, the climate is suitable for searching for food and breeding, with many food sources emerging. Q3 During this period, birds fly from the southern regions of the globe towards the north. After a few months, they get back to south once the weather becomes cold, in search of ideal living places. Q4

When we look at migration habits, we need to consider how global warming has affected bird migration. As you probably know, global warming has led to changes in season, so in certain parts of the world, spring comes earlier. When this happens, the plants and insects that birds need to bring up their young appear from the ground much earlier. Research indicates that many birds have begun to migrate earlier due to the higher temperatures. However, not all birds begin their migration at a date early enough to take advantage of the abundance of food. As a result, some birds die out gradually. Q5 Scientists are currently researching this in more detail.

Well...migration depends on the type of the bird and where the bird comes from. For example, let's look at something referred to as 'partial' migration. This is basically when some birds of a particular species migrate and others don't. Q6 The migration habits ultimately depend on the weather change, which are perhaps more common in tropical regions. Another example involves the Arctic tern, which actually travels from one end of the globe to the other, from the Arctic to the Antarctic. Q7 This is truly astonishing! OK...so, the last thing I'd like to talk about isn't quite as impressive as the Arctic tern's migration habits, but it is equally fascinating. Birds that travel across North America do so in a very special way. The pattern is always the same: Birds fly northeast and then turn around in the opposite direction and head southwest. Q8 So, if you think about it, they're actually migrating in a circular pattern, like the hands of a clock, not in a straight line, as we might think.

4.3

Presenter: Hi there...in today's programme we'll discuss intelligent animals. Olivia Miller is an animal expert whose studies focus on highly intelligent animals. Good afternoon, Olivia.

Olivia Miller: Hi.

Presenter: Alright, let's talk about the animals you study. What are their main characteristics?

Olivia Miller: Well, I'm sure most people are aware that whales and dolphins are two highly intelligent species. Q1 They have a whole range of special traits. Both species search for food in large groups, Q2 as well as communicating with each other by making noises... Q3

Presenter: Well. It sounds they are highly intelligent.

Olivia Miller: Aside from them, African grey parrots are also intelligent. They can speak by copying and imitating human's voice. Q4

Presenter: That's amazing!

Olivia Miller: Yes, and they can even have a conversation with you. Well, one or two words, though…

Presenter: Fantastic!

Olivia Miller: Dogs, too, are very intelligent when it comes to communication. Q5 Oh, and many dogs have excellent memories. Q6 I studied one dog, actually, and discovered he could remember the names of thousands of objects, which he was able to fetch when I instructed him to. Q7 It was quite incredible!

Presenter: Wow! His memory is better than mine!

Olivia Miller: Haha, well, speaking of memory…chimpanzees are pretty special.

Presenter: How?

Olivia Miller: Well, they can remember number sequences. Q8 One of them I studied was able to remember the numbers from 1 to 10 on a computer screen and then recall where they were when the numbers disappeared. Q9

Presenter: That's extraordinary!

Olivia Miller: Yes, and the really incredible thing is that he only

saw the numbers for about a second. **Q10** I mean, I didn't even have time to process them in my brain, but he remembered them all.

Presenter: Wow, I'm sure I cannot do that either.

Unit 10 Across the Universe

1.3

Interviewer: One disadvantage of the space programme is the expense. The government has spent billions of dollars on space exploration. Should we spend the money on other things?

Scientist: Yes, the cost of space exploration is high. But it brings us a lot of benefits as well. We have made some incredible discoveries in space exploration.

Interviewer: Have you got any examples?

Scientist: For example, it helped us to discover moons that orbit a certain planet. Besides, it gives us much more information about our solar system, galaxy, and universe.

Interviewer: Yes. It is good as long as you needn't take the astronauts into consideration. It is reported that when the astronauts are in space, the radiation that comes from the Sun is a constant danger to them, and the weightless environment can change their physical condition.

Scientist: Well, those astronauts may think it is worthwhile to accomplish the assigned mission. In addition, space exploration encourages us to share instead of being selfish. By exploring the space with cooperative endeavor, many countries are united and try to find common ground in spite of their cultural differences.

Interviewer: What about the benefits for individuals?

Scientist: At the beginning, people have been fascinated by the world around them. They've tried to learn more and see more, which has inspired us to explore every corner of the Earth. Our exploration of space, however, has just started and we have a lot more to learn. Not only does the exploration give us answers, it also offers us different perspectives to see the Earth.

1.4

Reporter: When it was announced by NASA that an old satellite weighing 6,000 kilogrammes was flying towards the Earth, many people were worried. Everyone knew it would fall, but nobody knew where. Finally, it fell into the Pacific Ocean. But this made us ask: How much junk actually exists in space?

Dr Johnson: Well, we call it orbital debris. Most of it crashes into each other or explodes.

Reporter: NASA estimates that there are about 13,000 large fragments, which are about the size of a pear or an orange. And all of them orbit the Earth in a giant debris cloud. There's an image of this debris cloud on the screen right here.

3.2

练习1

As we confront the possibility that soon we will be able to send astronauts to more remote parts of the universe, I'm going to focus on some potential problems of travelling to and living in deep space.

Now, I'm sure you've all heard of the ISS, or the International Space Station, but you may not know it performs a series of very important tasks. **Q1** Those tasks require that the astronauts and scientists in the ISS participate in experiments. For example, there is research on the impacts of space travel on the human body. **Q2** Our bodies are built with many mechanisms that ensure our brain continues to receive the amount of blood we require. However, in a low-gravity environment, the distribution of blood will change. **Q3** This is referred to as 'fluid shift'. Specifically, there will be a blocked nose, headache or 'moon face' as some medical practitioners call. These symptoms are actually very similar to the experience when you have a heavy cold and can lead to something called 'space sickness'. Anyone who has ever been on the ships may know what it's like to sail during a storm. **Q4** Once the astronauts have been in a weightless condition for some time, they experience headaches and an extreme tiredness. Almost half of the astronauts suffer from these symptoms, which usually don't last long and will disappear after a few days.

However, the effects space travel has on the body's bone structure are long-lasting. After almost two weeks of weightlessness, the body loses about 3% of its bone content, thus weakening the bone. **Q5** The good news, however, is that there are things that can be done to make up for the damage. The way to do this is to ensure you get a lot of exercise, which is why space stations are equipped with things like exercise bikes. **Q6** In space, people don't use their muscles so much, so they generally get weaker.

One of the biggest problems, though, is cosmic radiation, which is what scientists are really struggling to deal with. **Q7** It isn't clear where it came from, but some believe it is from black holes, which means that it came from distant galaxies. And it can pass right through the human body and seriously damage the genetic system. **Q8**

When astronauts carry out space missions, they must wear spacesuits. The space helmet can help shield against eye-damaging radiation. **Q9** There is a liquid-cooling garment protecting skin from searing heat, as the cool water in the tube can transfer the heat to space. **Q10** A backpack life support system can provide necessary oxygen for breathing. The hard upper torso and lower torso can be flexible enough to allow astronauts to perform difficult tasks in space. The boots are made from thermal insulation materials…

练习2

Presenter: On today's episode of the *Space* programme, I'm going to discuss about Mars' life experience. When the *Curiosity Rover* landed on Mars in the late summer of 2012, a number of the mission's scientists on the Earth made a decision to live for three months on Mars time in order to monitor the rover from the Earth. Oh, sorry, actually it was a four-month experience. **Q1** Dr Ford was one of these people.

Welcome Dr Ford!

Ford: Hi, there.

Presenter: As I understand, it can be difficult to get to sleep on Mars time. Is that right?

Ford: Yes. It was discovered that our sleep was badly affected when we tried to work on Mars time, which in some cases can lead to depression. When suffering like this, we found it hard to work. But, we had to overcome this problem because we needed to control the actions of the rover on Mars. **Q2** What's more, it takes the Earth 24 hours to complete one full rotation, but it takes Mars about 24 hours and 40 minutes. **Q3** And it was difficult for some of our scientists to perform their work because they were separated from their families for quite a long time. **Q4**

Presenter: I heard the head scientist of *Curiosity* mission could see his family.

Ford: Oh, actually, it was his family that surprised him. They went to the Mars project centre to spend some time with him. **Q5** They found it difficult at the beginning, as they were worried it would be too boring. But, actually, they discovered that there were a lot of things for them to do.

Presenter: Really? Could you tell us more about the place?

Ford: I could only tell you about the entertainment zones. We had a 24 / 7 cafeteria in the centre, which provided all kinds of food. To be honest, I gained a few pounds after this period. On the left of the cafeteria was a bowling alley. **Q6** And there was a café next to it, **Q7** which was a good place to relax after work. We also had a small cinema on the other side of the cafeteria, **Q8** where we could even watch the latest films. Further down right at the end of the corridor, it was our gym and it became an important part of our life, because it was impossible to keep working on Mars time without moderate exercise. Next door was a sauna, **Q9** where you could have a rest after exercising. Now back along the corridor, you would find the beach on the other end. **Q10** It was of great fun.

Presenter: That sounds amazing!

4.1

Today's lecture is about astronomy. For those who don't know, astronomy is the scientific study of the outer space. I'm going to begin by talking a little about telescopes and then we'll discuss some key aspects of amateur astronomy.

Now, Edwin Hubble has the distinction of having one of the most powerful telescopes named after him, which is the Hubble Space Telescope. To be frank, the telescope is actually symbolic in the history of astronomy. To some extent, it started what eventually became known as the 'scientific revolution'. **Q1** Whenever we think of science, the first thing that comes to our mind might be a pioneering scientist or a grand theory, but in reality, science has more to do with the instruments.

The world's first famous astronomer was, of course, Galileo, who founded the science of star watching in Italy. Although he cannot take credit for the world's first telescope, he was the first scientist to add a lens to his telescope that magnified objects in the sky, enabling observers to get a closer look at them. **Q2** Before then, scientists could only observe objects on the Earth, but suddenly it was possible to look at things that were much farther away — in the sky! It wasn't until the middle of the 19th century that photography made more things possible. John William Draper, a chemistry professor, was the first person to produce a photograph of the Moon in black and white. **Q3** From then on, humans worked towards developing more powerful telescopes. Millions of pictures have appeared in magazines, the mainstream media and across the Internet. The majority of professional astronomers aren't interested in the aesthetics of images of space, since they are seeking research data. However, when a Hubble Space Telescope captured a distant star or galaxy, **Q4** even the most serious scientists couldn't help being blown away by what they saw. Amateur astronomers, though, usually have different goals, as many simply want to get hold of the spectacular images of the sky above. **Q5** They seek images of things invisible to the naked eye, um...like fantastic pictures of Jupiter. This has become possible thanks to the popularity of telescopes.

OK, so let's see how a telescope works. When you observe a distant object in the sky, **Q6** the curved mirror at the bottom will collect the light and reflect it. **Q7** A small mirror is placed in the middle and directs light to the eyepiece lens, which can help magnify images. **Q8** The mirror must be very small so that it doesn't block the light to the curved mirror. In this way, you can see clearer and brighter images. All astronomers are attempting to uncover the mysteries of how stars were formed in the first place, and how the universe grew into its current form. Many amateur astronomers have a huge amount of expert knowledge that is highly valued by professionals.

4.2

Welcome to our Space Centre. I'm your tour guide today, and I guarantee that you will have a meaningful and happy day. First of all, you'll see the Information Centre when you walk through the entrance. **Q1** You can ask for the maps of the area or other useful information here. The big building to the east of the Information Centre is our Astronaut Centre, **Q2** where you can have a training experience of being an astronaut, which is suitable for all ages. Why not give a try? And if you are not interested in the training, you can go to Universe Theatre to the south of Astronaut Centre, **Q3** where you can watch cool films or documentaries with 3D effect. To the north of Astronaut Centre stands a house, which provides a virtual journey to Mars. **Q4** Are you curious about what it is like? I will leave some expectations for you. If you are tired, I suggest you take our shuttle bus, which can take you everywhere in the area and only costs two pounds once. And you can find the entrance to bus tour is to the east of Astronaut Centre. **Q5** Next, I will introduce another important place, the Space Shuttle Centre, which is located in the northeast corner of the area, **Q6** where you can have a shuttle launch experience. There is also a Hubble Space Telescope Theatre to the west of it, **Q7** where you can use the famous Hubble Space Telescope to observe the distant objects in the sky. It's a perfect place for amateur astronomers! And there is an International Space Station Gallery to the west of the theatre

where you can appreciate many spectacular photographs of stars and galaxies. Q8 Oh, if anyone wants to use the toilet, please find it to the south of the gallery. Q9 And we also have a lovely souvenir shop next to the gallery. You can buy a range of gifts there. Please take your time and have fun shopping. Lastly, if you are hungry, we also have a restaurant in the northwest, Q10 where you can try our special diet for professional astronauts. Now, you will have three hours in the centre, so enjoy your time!

Answers

Unit 6 Globalisation and Culture

Listening

1.1

1 A 2 C 3 D

1.2

1 C 2 C 3 A 4 B

1.3

1 A 2 C 3 D 4 B 5 G 6 E 7 F

2.3

练习1

选项数量多于空格数量的匹配题；关键词略；翻译标记略

练习2

选项数量少于空格数量的匹配题；关键词略；翻译略

练习3（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 in part; to some degree
2 conventional; classical
3 opinion; review
4 cheap; economical
5 expensive; dear

3.2

练习1

1 E 2 A 3 C

练习2

1 A 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 C 6 A 7 B

4.1

1 C 2 A 3 B 4 C

4.2

1-3 单项选择题；关键词略

4-5 选项数量多于空格数量的匹配题；关键词略

4.3

1 B 2 C 3 C 4 B 5 D

4.4

1 A 2 C 3 B 4 A 5 B

Reading

1.1

1 China
2 Spain
3 Italy
4 Japan
5 Australia
6 Egypt

1.2

1 ancient
2 unique
3 incompatible
4 constant
5 identical

1.3

1 D 2 A 3 C 4 B

1.4

略

2

任务1

1

1) 丝绸之路

第一段第二、三句：This early trading route between the two civilisations stretched for thousands of miles and was called the Silk Road. It was during this time that trade started to become a global affair.

2) 交易

第二段第四句：Despite the small economic benefits, ...with traders making a huge profit as a consequence of various transactions that took place.

2

1) A 2) D 3) A 4) B

任务2

1 C 2 A 3 略

任务3

1

1) 使合并；使融入

第一段第三句：Following the 'Scientific Revolution' in the fields of astronomy, mechanics...'discovered', then conquered, and finally integrated parts of this new continent into their economies.

2) 多余的

第二段第四句：Another significant exploration was Magellan's journey around the globe...from Europe and the Arabic world and making them redundant.

3) 不平衡的

第三段第二句：While trade undoubtedly became global at this point and was a large factor in the birth of the Age of Discovery, the global economy was still very much lopsided.

4) 剥削；榨取

第三段第四句：Moreover, the colonial model was predominantly a kind of exploitation, which included the shameful legacy of slavery.

2 C 3 D

3

任务1

1

1) the requirement for people to be successful in the globalised world

第一段最后一句：The beneficiaries will be the ones who...continuously increase the benchmark of what it takes to succeed.

2) jobs that belong to the lower end of the work spectrum

第五段第一句：At the other end of the spectrum...refuse

collectors, caterers, bank tellers, and shop assistants.

3) elements that undermine the advantage of Western education
第六段第一句：Currently, Western nations...online education platforms like MIT's OpenCourseWare, Open Yale Courses, iTunes U, and Khan Academy.

4) examples of platforms where all kinds of expertise can be found
第八段第一句：As of now, platforms like Upwork and Guru... providing access to a whole range of online and Internet-oriented expertise.

2 1) D 2) B 3) A 4) B

任务2

1 A 2 B 3 C 4 B 5 A

4

1 B 2 A 3 D 4 C 5 C 6 D

Speaking

1.1

1 Halloween 2 Christmas 3 Valentine's Day
4 Mid-autumn Festival

1.2

China	England	America	Australia	Germany	France
Great Wall, dumpling, Chinese	River Thames, fish and chips, British English	Hollywood, Coca Cola, American English	Sydney Opera House, Australian English	dark beer, German	Eiffel Tower, macaroon, French

2.1

练习1

1 That he became a pianist may have been due to his mother.
2 It's unfair that in some countries women are still treated unequally.
3 What we cannot get seems better than what we already have.

练习2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

Many of us must have experienced culture shock when we travel abroad. What we consider to be common can be extremely odd or crazy in foreigners' eyes. In China, many elder people will pat the child's head to show their care for the child and many of us take it for granted. However, in some countries, that a stranger touches a kid's head will be regarded as disrespect. It is best for us to learn more about their customs before we start our journey in a foreign country.

（解答思路：在介绍抽象概念的时候，考生可以举一到两个具体的例子。此外，适当使用主语从句可以起到强调作用。）

4.1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

My favourite holiday is the Spring Festival. This holiday is important for all Chinese people as Christmas for Westerners. Family members get together to eat traditional food like dumplings and set off fireworks. Most people watch the CCTV Spring Festival Gala on television, which gathers the best performers and entertainers in China.

4.2

略

Writing

1.1

1 tradition 2 global 3 heritage 4 charitable
5 custom 6 international 7 aid 8 identity

1.2

1 international 2 customs 3 Charitable
4 aids 5 global

2.1

1 international cuisine 2 fast-food chains
3 cultural identity 4 famous international brands
5 historical figures 6 cultural norms

2.2

1 is 2 was 3 are
4 has 5 is 6 make

2.3

1 including 2 Clearly 3 Alternatively
4 To give an illustration of this 5 Simultaneously
6 What is more

3.1

1 idea 2 explanation
3 example 4 result of the example
5 conclusion 6 idea
7 explanation 8 further explanation
9 additional information 10 conclusion

3.2

1 saw an increase 2 the highest number
3 saw downward trends 4 is expected to decline
5 In contrast 6 remain unchanged

4.1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 The aim of this new structure would be the management of globalisation.
2 Professional teams should be sent to poor countries with the purpose of educating future talents.
3 Under globalisation, governments often need to take joint efforts to seek effective solutions to many problems.
4 During times of economic boom, nations can afford to be more charitable to those countries who have the least.
5 Charitable works are an essential part of social development, elevating millions of people out of poverty.
6 With colourful forms and unique customs, traditional Chinese culture attracts global visitors and thus boosts the development of tourism.

4.2

1 the highest percentage 2 slightly lower
3 By contrast 4 saw an increase
5 declined 6 respectively
7 a downward trend 8 remained at the lowest position

Unit 7 Doing Business

Listening

1.1

1 allocated 2 budget 3 Demand
4 contract 5 strike 6 stocks

1.2

1 利率 2 劳动力 3 工会
4 市场份额 5 用户体验 6 公共关系

1.3

1 D　2 E　3 A　4 C　5 F　6 B

2.3

练习1

1 on　2 under　3 in　4 next to
5 opposite to　6 over　7 in front of　8 across

练习2

填空题型的地图题

练习3

选择题型的地图题

练习4

1 D　2 A　3 B　4 E　5 C

3.2

练习1

1 Jewellery　2 Cosmetics
3 Café　4 Lift
5 Children's zone　6 American restaurant
7 Bathroom　8 Service desk

练习2

1 finance　2 a letter　3 online service
4 customers　5 security　6–7 *IN EITHER ORDER* B, D
8–10 *IN ANY ORDER* B, C, E

4.1

1 B　2 B　3 C　4 C

4.2

1 E　2 D　3 A　4 C　5 B

4.3

1 Shopping mall　2 School　3 Post office
4 Train station　5 Bank

Reading

1.1

1 B　2 E　3 A　4 D　5 C

1.2

1 invested　2 launching　3 anticipate
4 import　5 expanded

1.3

1 E　2 D　3 B　4 C　5 A

1.4

略

2

任务1

1

1) structural　*adj.*　结构的
2) fertiliser　*n.*　化肥
3) willingness　*n.*　意愿
4) hydroponic　*adj.*　水栽的
5) specialised　*adj.*　专门的；专用的

2 第一段第一句：A profit margin is basically the money left over after all additional costs have been fully paid.
第二段第六句：Basically, the difference between what you sold your products for and what is originally paid amounts to the profit margin.
第五段第一句：Profit margins contribute to the net profit, which is the total amount of money the business makes following the sale of its products.

任务2

1 第二段倒数第二个单词：pyramid

2

1) prioritise　*v.*　划分优先顺序；优先处理
2) self-actualisation　*n.*　自我实现
3) theorist　*n.*　理论家
4) obligation　*n.*　义务，责任
5) optimum　*adj.*　最佳的

3 serenity表示"平静"；clutter表示"杂乱"；buster表示"破坏者"。根据后文中保洁人员对自己的工作有认同感判断，这三个称呼应属褒义。即使不认识其中的某些单词，也不影响理解作者对这几个称呼的分析。

3

任务1

1 1) E　2) B　3) A

2 1) *IN EITHER ORDER* B, E
2) *IN EITHER ORDER* B, C

任务2

IN ANY ORDER A, B, C, D, G

4

1 *IN EITHER ORDER* B, D

2 *IN EITHER ORDER* A, D

Speaking

1.1

attractive	well-located	moneymaking	well-trained
appealing, charming	conveniently located, well-situated	lucrative, profitable	skilled, capable, qualified

1.2

1 to lend　2 losing　3 to save
4 to pay　5 checking; to borrow

2.1

练习1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 Many people think that wearing expensive watches can show their wealth.
2 We are now discussing whether we should combine these three companies.
3 I'll try to find out if / whether the machine is in good condition.

练习2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

No one can deny that it is essential to be punctual at work, because it is not only polite but also good for the project when teamwork is involved. In a business conference, it is courteous to be on time because it shows that you care about others and don't want to waste any time at work. If you are late in a formal meeting, your customers will believe that you don't even pay attention to this meeting at all.

（解答思路：考生可以根据图片内容讲述工作场合中的注意事项，例如遵守时间、会议礼仪、着装要求等，适当结合宾语从句即可。）

4.1

1 B　2 C　3 A

4.2

略

Writing

1.1

1 stress 2 career 3 salary 4 balance
5 profit 6 market 7 loyal 8 compete

1.2

1 loyal 2 compete 3 salary
4 stress 5 market 6 profit

2.1

1 labour market 2 unemployment rate
3 balance between work and life 4 were laid off
5 mass production 6 earn a living

2.2

1 are fed 2 are milked 3 is stored
4 is delivered 5 is made 6 are transported

2.3

1 On the whole 2 Fortunately 3 What is worse
4 In fact 5 On top of 6 For one thing; For another

3.1

1 idea 2 explanation 3 example
4 result of the example 5 conclusion
6 idea 7 explanation 8 example
9 result of the example 10 conclusion

3.2

1 is put 2 dropped 3 are added
4 are stored 5 are moved 6 are sent
7 are heated 8 being cooled 9 are packaged

4.1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 Positive feedback can improve job satisfaction that motivates employees to further perfect their performances.
2 The youth of today expect to acquire a sense of achievement through their labour.
3 Working from home means the employees have less contact with other people at the office.
4 Health researchers have found that overwork is related to a higher risk of heart disease and stroke.
5 Older people play an important part in many organisations and this should not be denied.
6 Under such circumstances, the impact of financial crisis on the capital market is huge.

4.2

1 are grown 2 are harvested 3 cut
4 being fermented 5 are spread 6 are packaged
7 are transported 8 are roasted 9 are crushed
10 is used

Unit 8 Ecosystem

Listening

1.1

Renewable energy	Non-renewable energy
solar energy, wind energy, tidal energy	coal, oil, natural gas, nuclear energy

1.2

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 C 5 A

1.3

1 reverse 2 electricity 3 spin
4 vegetation 5 sailing 6 generating

2.3

练习1

填空题；关键信息略

练习2

选择题

1 B 2 C 3 D 4 A 5 E

练习3（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 carbon footprint of America
2 cycle trips
3 not enough fuels
4 get too hot
5 The extinction of some ocean species can be caused by overfishing.
6 Unregulated human activities have broken the balance of ecosystem.

3.2

练习1

1 E 2 A 3 C 4 D

练习2

1 plants / waste 2 waste / plants 3 eco-friendly
4 agriculture 5 factories 6 store
7 powder 8 sticky 9 boilers
10 electricity

4.1

略

4.2

1 direct current electricity 2 home devices
3 electric network 4 supply / measure
5 measure / supply 6 reserves
7 credits 8 nights 9 demand
10 70% / seventy per cent / 70 per cent

4.3

1 First 2 Next 3 in the end

4.4

1 ...the solar inverter converts the energy into the kind that is used by most home devices.
2 This is particularly useful during summer months when there are huge reserves of solar energy.
3 ...during hours of low electricity production, such as nights or when the weather is bad, these credits can be used to get extra energy from the network...

Reading

1.1

1 grassland 2 tundra 3 desert
4 forest 5 marine 6 freshwater

1.2

1 blossom 2 circulates 3 breed
4 prey 5 stretching

1.3

1 tropical 2 Siberian steppe 3 rock
4 ponds 5 stationary 6 salt water

1.4

略

2

任务1

1 （答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1) 第三段第一句：but

2) 第四段最后一句：In contrast

3) 第五段第二句：However

4) 第六段第一句：More alarmingly

5) 第八段第一句：However

2

1) but在句中表示转折，下文将对winners进行具体解释，因此but之后的内容更为重要。

2) In contrast 在句中表示对比，In contrast前后的内容呈现比较关系，但并没有重要程度的区分。

3 （答案不唯一，仅供参考）

指出问题的严重性；为后文对问题进行深入探讨作铺垫；连接句子或段落。

任务2

1 （答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1) 第二段第一句和第三句：difference between; on the other hand

2) 第三段第三句：the most

3) 第四段第二句：far outstripped

4) 第五段第二、三句：far cheaper; cheaper

5) 第六段第四句：on the other hand

6) 第六段最后一句：cheaper

2 （加粗部分为转折信号词，加下划线部分为强调的信息）

1) Despite its oil reserves, Texas is leading the way in a major shift towards a renewable future.

2) It is often said that renewables are so expensive that we need to continue using fossil fuels for economic reasons, **but** this is not true.

3

Type of energy: renewable energy

Reason 1 Renewable energy can be replenished.

Reason 2 Renewable energy costs less.

Reason 3 Renewable energy is cleaner.

3

任务1

1 C

2

1) vi 2) iv 3) i 4) ii

任务2

1 ii 2 vii 3 i 4 iii 5 vi 6 iv

4

1 iii 2 i 3 iv 4 ii 5 v

Speaking

1.1

1 island 2 river 3 cliff
4 forest 5 mountain 6 waterfall

1.2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

As far as I know, volcanoes can be divided into three types, active volcanoes, extinct volcanoes, and dormant volcanoes. Actually we don't talk much about volcanoes in our daily conversations. But I'd like to pay a visit to some extinct volcanoes to see what they look like if I have the chance.

2.1

练习1

1 Her daughters, both of whom work as botanists, send her potted plants as gifts every year. / Both of her daughters, who send her potted plants as gifts every year, work as botanists.

2 The plant, which I watered once a week, survived. / I watered the plant, which survived, once a week.

3 These kinds of flowers are not so common in the south where the rainy season lasts longer. / In the south, where these kinds of flowers are not so common, the rainy season lasts longer.

练习2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

Everything in the ecosystem is interrelated with one another. Plants account for a significant part in the ecosystem, for they produce energy that is essential for other creatures. Animals, on the other hand, consume plants and other animals which are called prey. However, all of these creatures must rely on the environment they live in, in which there is sunlight, water, soil, rock and so on.

（解答思路：考生可以根据图片中生态系统的组成部分来具体讲述各个部分的功能，用定语从句来解释说明。）

4.1

1 Tianjin is one of my favourite cities. It has absolutely great ~~nature~~ / views / scenery and magnificent buildings there.

2 Flowing / Running / ~~Leading~~ right through the centre of the city, the river enjoys a growing popularity, with many people sitting and having picnics by the side / ~~in the middle~~ / on the bank of the river at the weekend.

4.2

略

Writing

1.1

1 energy 2 natural 3 population
4 scarce 5 recyclable 6 pollution
7 rubbish 8 climate

1.2

1 recyclable 2 climate 3 rubbish
4 pollution 5 population 6 energy

2.1

1 stabilise energy prices 2 toxic chemical substance
3 disposable products 4 tropical rainforests
5 carbon emissions 6 drinking water

2.2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 There is a forest park beside the living quarter.

2 There are many diseases caused by environmental degradation.

3 There are a lot of activities calling for protecting natural resources.

4 There is an urgent need to raise public awareness of environmental protection.

5 There are strict regulations to control carbon emissions in some countries.

2.3

1 *IN EITHER ORDER* D, E 2 B
3 C 4 A

3.1

1 idea 2 explanation 3 example
4 additional information 5 conclusion

6 idea 7 explanation 8 example
9 result of the example 10 conclusion

3.2

1 In the northwest of the river
2 beside the river
3 to the north of the shops
4 In the south of the river
5 In the west part of Maple Town
6 the place where the farmland was located in 2000

4.1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 The finite nature of natural resources will probably lead to a major energy crisis within the next few decades.
2 The economic development should not rely upon the large-scale exploitation of natural resources.
3 Overusing energy will only lead to further environmental damage.
4 Some contend that the frequent occurrence of extreme weather is a consequence of global warming.
5 Many governments have introduced legislation to request individuals and companies to comply with recycling schemes.
6 In China, the government will enact strict policies to ensure homeowners classify their garbage.

4.2

1 expanded greatly
2 in the northeast part of the city
3 was removed to make way for
4 Along the coast
5 disappeared entirely
6 not much difference
7 remained unchanged
8 to the right of the hotel

Unit 9 Wildlife

Listening

1.1

1 chimpanzee 2 dolphin 3 giraffe
4 peacock 5 lion 6 whale

1.2

1 B 2 E 3 A 4 C 5 F 6 D

1.3

1 research 2 endangered 3 expert
4 binoculars 5 images 6 track
7 scenery 8 observing

2.3

练习1

略

练习2

1 task 2 prey 3 protect
4 Seek 5 daytime 6 surprise

练习3

略

练习4

略

3.2

练习1

1–2 *IN EITHER ORDER* D, E
3–5 *IN ANY ORDER* B, D, E

练习2

1 1980s 2 sixty / 60 3 safety 4 Giraffes
5 hands 6 B 7 A 8 C
9 E 10 D

4.1

略

4.2

1 A 2 A 3 C 4 B
5 C 6 A 7 B 8 A

4.3

1 Whales 2 groups 3 noises
4 human's 5 Dogs 6 memories
7 Fetch 8 numbers 9 disappeared
10 1 second

4.4

略

Reading

1.1

1 B 2 D 3 C 4 D 5 A
6 A 7 C 8 B 9 A 10 C

1.2

1 poison 2 nests 3 pose 4 energy 5 eyesight

1.3

1 1) C 2) A 3) C 4) B 5) C 6) B
2 white polar bears and seal pups; lions and gazelles; Galápagos tortoises and cactuses
3
略

1.4

略

2

任务1

1
1) egg(s) 2) butterfly larvae / caterpillar(s)
3) chrysalis 4) butterfly / butterflies
2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）
1) 第三段第一句：The next stage is called the larval stage which is experienced by almost all insects.
2) 第六段第一句：When the caterpillar has completed the larval stage, it will then start to inhabit a chrysalis, which is the last phase for the caterpillar's exoskeleton.
3) 第七段第一句：Once a butterfly hatches from the chrysalis, it enters the final stage of its life.
3
Stage 1—B; Stage 2—C; Stage 3—D; Stage 4—A

任务2

1
1) A (once) 2) C (Yet) 3) B (because)
4) A (If) 5) C (However); A (if) 6) D (Aside from)
2
1) × 2) √ 3) √
3

任务1

1 D
2 C

3 1) ii 2) i 3) iii

4 略

任务2

1 ii 2 vi 3 iv 4 i 5 v

4

1 vi 2 iv 3 v 4 i 5 ii 6 vii

Speaking

1.1

1 leopard 2 lobster 3 zebra 4 crab
5 elephant 6 shark

1.2

略

2.1

练习1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 The investigation team found that people here made a living by hunting as soon as they arrived at the small town.
2 If a kind of species loses its ability to find food, it will be extinct soon.
3 The deer ran fast so that it could throw the lion off.
4 As environmental problems still haven't been solved, soil pollution has threatened many animals' habitats.
5 Although in the last few months, I have helped plant some bushes in this conservation area, it was still unfamiliar to me.
6 Leopards are amazingly swift as if they seem faster than lightning.
7 You'd better make a mark where you have questions.
8 There had never been so many cases of illegal elephant hunting as we have seen in the last few decades.

练习2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

Deer are very adorable, so it is no surprise that they are well-loved animals and very common in popular culture. Deer are typical herbivores. It is said that there are many species of deer in the world. Most deer live in forest and grassland areas. They are impressive runners and skilled jumpers. Due to the many different types of deer out there and the locations where they are found, most people don't even consider them to be among the endangered species. Actually, some species of deer are no longer with us. We should protect their wild habitats to save the deer population, so that a balanced ecosystem can be maintained.

（解答思路：图片展示了人类与动物亲密接触的景象。因此，考生可着重描述动物的特性和人与动物之间的关系等。在说明动物的某些特点时，可以使用本单元学到的状语从句。）

4.1

1 against 2 in the wild
3 rainforests 4 natural habitats
5 laboratory experiments 6 cosmetic
7 endangered 8 cruelty

4.2

略

Writing

1.1

1 creature 2 partner 3 combat
4 research 5 capture 6 pain
7 ethical 8 medical

1.2

1 medical 2 ethical 3 pain
4 combat 5 research 6 creature

2.1

1 Fox hunting
2 expansion of spaces for human habitation
3 synthetic stuff
4 kept in captivity
5 generate tourism revenue
6 relying on animals and plants

2.2

1 It is the expansion of human population that is reducing biological diversity to its lowest level.
2 It is large greenhouse gas emissions that livestock farming is responsible for.
3 It is in finding life-saving medicines that animal research plays an essential role.
4 It is a fact that loss of habitat has been the leading cause of extinction.
5 It is apparent that animals bear a likeness to humans in many physical aspects.
6 It is not necessary for captive animals to hunt or raise offspring.

2.3

1 *IN EITHER ORDER* B, D 2 *IN EITHER ORDER* A, C
3 *IN EITHER ORDER* E, F

3.1

1 idea 2 explanation 3 further explanation
4 additional information 5 conclusion
6 idea 7 explanation 8 example
9 result of the example 10 conclusion

3.2

1 the greatest proportion 2 the most popular way
3 as the second choice 4 made up similar percentages
5 the lowest figure 6 exactly the same figure

4.1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 Whether animals should be kept in zoos has long been a disputed issue.
2 Areas inhabited by endangered species are degrading at a tremendous pace.
3 In recent decades, attitudes towards wildlife protection have become more insistent and urgent.
4 Protecting wildlife is of great significance in preventing food chains from being damaged.
5 Unless actions are taken to preserve wildlife on the planet, the ecological environment will be severely damaged.
6 In the field of medicine, animal testing is still essential in developing drugs and other treatments for incurable diseases.

4.2

1 made up the highest percentage
2 a relatively big change
3 nearly the same figure
4 the largest contributor
5 saw a sharp rise
6 tripling its percentage
7 experienced
8 went down rapidly
9 underwent a change

10 declined to 1%
11 halved
12 dropped

Unit 10 Across the Universe

Listening

1.1

1 B 2 C 3 F 4 A 5 D 6 E

1.2

1 C 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 C 6 B

1.3 (答案不唯一，仅供参考)

Advantages: incredible discoveries; encourage people to share instead of being selfish; give us answers about space; offer us different perspectives to see the Earth

Disadvantages: high expense; dangerous to astronauts

1.4

1 satellite 2 Pacific Ocean 3 junk
4 explodes 5 pear

2.3

练习1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

可能按照题目的顺序介绍；起点可能在Entrance。

练习2（翻译部分仅供参考）

朔月：太阳和月亮在_____的一边排成一条线。
蛾眉月：月亮看起来越来越_____。
上弦月：在前半夜，只有一半的月亮是_____的。
盈月：月亮看起来_____成了凸形的。
满月：月亮看起来_____亮了。
亏月：我们看到一个在逐渐_____的月亮。
下弦月：在早晨和白天，我们能看到被太阳照亮一半的月球_____。
残月：我们能看见一道正在消退的_____，直到月球和太阳重新排成一条线。

1 Earth 2 large 3 visible 4 grow
5 fully 6 shrinking 7 surface 8 silver

3.2

练习1

1 tasks 2 impacts 3 blood 4 sailing
5 Bones 6 exercise 7 Radiation 8 genetic
9 helmet 10 heat

练习2

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 A 5 B
6 C 7 B 8 D 9 E 10 A

4.1

练习1

略

练习2

1 scientific revolution 2 observers
3 photograph 4 galaxies
5 spectacular images / images 6 distant object
7 reflect light 8 small mirror

4.2

练习1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

可能按照West-South-East-North的顺序介绍；起点可能在Entrance。

练习2

1 B 2 E 3 F 4 D 5 I
6 J 7 H 8 G 9 C 10 A

Reading

1.1

1 Mercury 2 Venus 3 Earth
4 Mars 5 Jupiter 6 Saturn
7 Uranus 8 Neptune

1.2

1 crashing 2 attracts 3 transmitted
4 form 5 explosion

1.3

1 cupbearer 2 vase 3 thunderbolt
4 wings 5 kingship 6 line
7 hunting 8 stick

1.4

略

2

任务1

1

1) 第二段第一句：Sunspots are storms on the surface of the Sun, characterised by strong magnetic activity.（太阳黑子）
2) 第二段第三句：It is commonly held that the number of spots on the Sun goes through a certain cycle, achieving a peak about every 11 years.（太阳活动峰年）
3) 第三段第一句和第二句：According to NASA's Marshall Space Flight Centre, solar wind consists of magnetised plasma flares and in some cases relates to sunspots. Solar wind starts from the Sun and has an effect on galactic rays that can lead to a series of atmospheric phenomena on the Earth, including cloud cover.（太阳风）

2

1) magnetised	*adj.*	磁化的
2) atmospheric	*adj.*	大气的
3) unbounded	*adj.*	无限的
4) emission	*n.*	排放；散发
5) planetary	*adj.*	行星的

3 （答案不唯一，仅供参考）

further; however; but

任务2

1

1) reflective / refractive	*adj.*	反射的 / 折射的
2) concave / convex	*adj.*	凹的 / 凸的
3) diffraction	*n.*	衍射

2 （答案不唯一，仅供参考）

first; afterwards; after; over the following few hundred years; up until

3 （答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1) Hans Lippershey	Hans Lippershey was believed to have invented the first telescope.
2) Galileo	Galileo invented his own design of a telescope and put it into practical use.
3) Isaac Newton	Isaac Newton made a few improvements to the original telescope.

3

任务1

1

1) iii 2) vi 3) i 4) iv 5) ii

2

1) B 2) B 3) D 4) A

任务2

1

1) vi 2) i 3) iii 4) iv 5) ii

2

1) B 2) D 3) A 4) C

3

1) YES 2) NO 3) YES

4) NOT GIVEN 5) NO

4

1 A 2 G 3 C 4 D 5 F

6–7 *IN EITHER ORDER* D, E

8 NOT GIVEN 9 TRUE 10 FALSE

11 TRUE 12 NOT GIVEN 13 TRUE

Speaking

1.1

1 cosmos 2 Milky Way

3 observatory 4 space station

1.2

1 cooperate 2 orbits

3 satellite 4 spacecraft

2.1

练习1

1 It was NASA that announced that they found a new star out of the galaxy.（强调主语）
It was a new star that NASA announced that they found out of the galaxy.（强调宾语）
It was out of the galaxy that NASA announced that they found a new star.（强调状语）

2 Is it the space junk problem that she is making an explanation about?

3 It was not until the satellite landed in the Pacific Ocean that people knew where it was.

练习2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

I enjoy gazing at the sky at night rather than in the daytime, since it is at night that all the fascinating stars come into our sight, which makes us wonder what truly exists in the outer space. In the daytime, the Sun is out and the sky is blue, with people hustling around you; it is not until the Sun sets that you can find some peace to explore the secrets of the universe and other abstract questions.

（解答思路：考生可以从天空中呈现的景象、探索自然的兴趣爱好等方面着手描述图片。）

4.1

1 space exploration 2 space travel

3 natural urge 4 limitations

5 interest 6 imaginative

7 sci-fi films

4.2

略

Writing

1.1

1 explore 2 space

3 satellite 4 launch

5 communication 6 visible

7 broadcast 8 wireless

1.2

1 explore 2 satellites

3 space 4 visible

5 broadcast 6 wireless

2.1

1 outer space 2 Earth orbit

3 communication satellite 4 space shuttle

5 space research 6 cutting-edge technology

2.2

1 was 2 has

3 move 4 to explore

5 was 6 to launch

2.3（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 举例 There are several ways to improve the hardness of the metal. Specifically, adding other metals to form an alloy is an effective method.

2 因果 Space stations are the living centre of all astronauts; hence they have to adapt to the life in space stations.

3 并列 The Moon orbits around the Earth; similarly, other satellites also move around the Earth.

4 条件 Space travel is not available until our technology has developed into a mature stage.

5 递进 Developing space science can provide better support for space missions; furthermore, the advancement can benefit our daily life in many other aspects.

3.1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

In conclusion, we should give priority to the research and exploration of the Earth instead of alien life. It may be interesting to discover an unknown civilisation, but that is unlikely to have any direct influence on our existence at the moment.

3.2

1 increased significantly / grew sharply

2 represented a rising level

3 increased by

4 grew sharply / increased significantly

5 made up the majority

6 doubled

7 increased from

8 witnessed a significant decline

9 accounting for the smallest part

4.1（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

1 Some space projects can help scientists learn more about the Earth's atmosphere.

2 Many satellites offer us statistics to predict weather changes and natural disasters more precisely.

3 It cannot be denied that space exploration puts astronauts' lives in danger.

4 Studies have shown that spending a long time in a zero gravity environment can seriously affect people's cardiovascular system.

5 People still believe the existence of aliens because there are

endless unexplored planets.

6 It takes millions of dollars to make a breakthrough in creating a stronger material.

4.2（答案不唯一，仅供参考）

开头段

背景句	With the increasing popularity of tourism, the fevered visitors are bored with the scenery on the Earth and move their eyes to the space. Many desire to board a space shuttle and enjoy the spectacular view of the universe in person.
改写题目	However, although space exploration has gone through more than half a century, the discussion on space travel is still heated.
立场或个人观点	For my part, the development of space tour will definitely attract a great amount of attention.

主体段1

观点	At present, space travel is still the priority of professional astronauts.
解释观点	They have to take a long-time training and keep a high quality of physical ability.
进一步解释或举例	However, even with the expensive cultivation, they sometimes would be involved in accidents, putting life in great danger.
细节或举例的结果	Thus, the risk for common people visiting the outer space can increase greatly.
结论	Therefore, security is the top concern for space tourists.

主体段2

观点	On the other hand, space travel indeed can broaden our view and even help us have a better understanding of the Earth.
解释观点	From the spacecraft, we can get a good view of the universe.
进一步解释或举例	Besides, the travelling will show us an impressive image of the Earth.
细节或举例的结果	After the travel, we may realise the importance of the Earth and want to play a part in protecting it.
结论	In this sense, space travel will bring great benefits to us.

结论段

主要观点总结	To conclude, visiting space will be very attractive, but it has to be ensured by advanced technology.
个人倾向	In my opinion, space travel will make great contributions to the economic growth, so it should be given support.

IELTS
Course

初级下

雅思标准教程

“雅思标准教程”为满足广大雅思考生的实际需求而编写。本教程在充分研究雅思考试所考查的基本能力和评分标准的基础上，从听、说、读、写四个维度培养考生的英语运用技能，强化考生在雅思考试中的得分实力。本教程分为四个级别，每个级别包括上下两册。预备级适合雅思目标分数为4.5~5.0分的考生使用，初级适合目标分数为5.0~5.5分的考生使用，中级适合目标分数为5.5~6.5分的考生使用，高级适合目标分数为6.5~7.5分的考生使用。

主要特色：

- 紧密结合雅思考试的考查重点和评分标准
- 注重英语能力的培养
- 讲解雅思考试各科目必备知识点和各题型解题技巧
- 练习题、模拟题丰富且符合雅思考试特点
- 阶段性复习有效巩固和强化知识点



登录网址 https://zengzhi.fltrp.com/dzyyxx/，
点击页面左侧“资源下载”栏目中的本书书名，即可看到音频的免费下载链接。

责任编辑：许圆圆　　责任校对：王晶　　封面设计：李高

ISBN 978-7-5213-4135-5

9 787521 341355 >

定价：56.00 元

记载人类文明
沟通世界文化
www.fltrp.com